

arV
16308

HAVET & BECKER'S
GERMAN COMPOSITION

HAVET'S METHOD OF LEARNING LANGUAGES.

Used in Colleges and Schools throughout the British Empire, the United States of America, as well as in Institutes on the Continent of Europe.

FRENCH SERIES.

THE FIRST FRENCH BOOK; or, Practical French Lessons for Beginners. 250 fcp. 8vo. pages, 1s. 6d.

FRENCH-ENGLISH COPY-BOOK: Models of Penmanship in French and English. Familiar Questions (with Answers). 2d.

THE FRENCH CLASS-BOOK. PART I. Reader, Conversations, Grammar, French and English Exercises, Dictionary, &c. 330 crown 8vo. pages, 4s. Twelfth Edition.

THE FRENCH CLASS-BOOK. PART II. Syntax and Peculiarities, with English and French Exercises. 180 crown 8vo. pages, 3s. 6d. Twelfth Edition.

THE FRENCH CLASS-BOOK. Complete in 1 Volume. Twelfth Edition. Crown 8vo. 6s. 6d.

LE LIVRE DU MAÎTRE. Key to 'The French Class-Book,' with Notes and Hints. 6s. 6d. New Edition, entirely recast, uniform with 'The French Class-Book.'

FRENCH STUDIES: Conversations on the ordinary Topics of Life, Colloquial Exercises, Extracts from Standard Writers, a Dictionary, &c. Ninth Edition. 400 8vo. pages, 5s. 6d.

HOUSEHOLD FRENCH: a Conversational Introduction to the French Language. Seventh Edition. 300 8vo. pages, 3s.

FRENCH COMPOSITION. I. English Prose Specimens to be done into French. **II.** Outlines of Narratives, Letters, &c. 272 8vo. pages. New Edition. 3s. 6d.

MORCEAUX TRADUITS DES PROSATEURS ANGLAIS. Key to 'French Composition,' with Notes. 300 8vo. pages, 4s.

GERMAN SERIES ON HAVET'S METHOD.

1. **THE FIRST GERMAN BOOK**; or, Practical German Lessons for Beginners. Fcp. 8vo. Uniform with 'Havet's First French Book.' New Edition. 1s. 6d.

2. **GERMAN STUDIES**, on the Plan of 'Havet's French Studies.' 4s.

3. **GERMAN COMPOSITION**, on the Plan of 'Havet's French Composition.' 3s. 6d.

BECKER'S KEY TO 'GERMAN COMPOSITION.' 4s.

HAVET'S ENGLISH FOR FRENCH PEOPLE.

L'ANGLAIS ENSEIGNÉ AUX FRANÇAIS, cours pratique sur un plan entièrement neuf. (Deux médailles d'honneur, Paris, 1876.) 1 vol. de 450 pages, 3s. 6d.

London: SIMPKIN, MARSHALL, & CO.

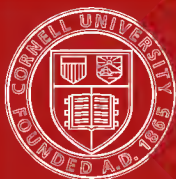
arV16308

English into German: German composition;



3 1924 031 308 459

olin,anx



Cornell University Library

The original of this book is in
the Cornell University Library.

There are no known copyright restrictions in
the United States on the use of the text.

UNIFORM WITH HAVET'S "FRENCH COMPOSITION."

ENGLISH INTO GERMAN.

GERMAN COMPOSITION

OR

ENGLISH PROSE SPECIMENS,
TO BE TRANSLATED INTO GERMAN, WITH THE ASSISTANCE OF
RENDERINGS AND NOTES ON THE IDIOMS AND
PECULIARITIES OF BOTH LANGUAGES.

BY

ALFRED G. HAVET,

OF THE BERLIN SOCIETY FOR THE CULTIVATION OF MODERN LANGUAGES;
Author of "French Studies," "French Composition," &c.

revised
A. L. BECKER,

TEACHER OF FOREIGN LANGUAGES.

LONDON:

SIMPKIN, MARSHALL, & CO.; S. LOW, SON, & MARSTON;

DULAU & CO.; ASHER & CO.; WILLIAMS & NORGATE.

EDINBURGH: J. MENZIES & CO.; WILLIAMS & NORGATE.

BERLIN: ASHER & CO., UNTER DEN LINDEN.

NEW YORK: SCRIBNER, WELFORD, & ARMSTRONG.

1873.



HAVET'S FRENCH EDUCATIONAL WORKS;

Used in Colleges and Schools throughout Great Britain, Ireland, the English Colonies, and the United States of America, as well as in many Anglo-French Establishments on the Continent of Europe.

A. 2266

THE FIRST FRENCH BOOK; or, Practical French Lessons for Beginners. 224 foolscap 8vo pages.

THE FRENCH CLASS-BOOK; Part I. containing Reader, Conversations, Grammar, French and English Exercises, Dictionary, &c. 330 crown 8vo pages.

THE FRENCH CLASS-BOOK; Part II., containing the syntax and Peculiarities of the French Language with numerous English and French Exercises. 180 crown 8vo pages.

THE COMPLETE FRENCH CLASS-BOOK; or, Grammars of French Grammars, Tenth Edition, in one volume. 250 crown 8vo pages.

LE LIVRE DU MAÎTRE; or, Key to both parts of "The French Class-Book," with numerous Notes and useful Hints.

FRENCH STUDIES: Modern Conversations upon the ordinary topics of life. Colloquial Exercises, Extracts from Standard Writers, a Dictionary, &c. Eighth Edition. 400 8vo pages.

HOUSEHOLD FRENCH: A Conversational Introduction to the French Language. Sixth Edition. 300 8vo pages.

FRENCH COMPOSITION; comprehending—I. Prose Specimens from British and American Authors, to be translated into French. II. Outlines of Narratives, Letters, &c. 272 8vo pages. New Edition.

MORCEAUX TRADUITS DES PROSATEURS ANGLAIS, suivis du développement des sujets de composition du précédent ouvrage (Key to "French Composition"). 300 8vo pages.

LEÇONS FRANÇAISES DE LITTÉRATURE ET DE CONVERSATION, pour faire suite aux "French Studies." [In preparation.]

—o—

GERMAN ON HAVET'S SYSTEM.

1. THE FIRST GERMAN BOOK; or, Practical German Lessons for Beginners. Foolscap 8vo.
2. GERMAN STUDIES, on the plan of "French Studies."
3. GERMAN COMPOSITION, on the plan of "French Studies."

These three works form a complete and practical course of modern German.

. *The right of translation and adaptation is reserved by the proprietor of both the French and the German series.*

PREFACE.

THIS selection is intended for those pupils who have finished "The First German Book," and done, if not the whole, at least the greater part of "German Studies." It is constructed on exactly the same plan as "French Composition," and will, it is hoped, afford exercises encouraging to the pupils and satisfactory to the master.

Following the plan of my other publications, I have generally preferred extracts of a familiar and practical description to pieces of too rhetorical or lofty a style, which are not conducive to the acquirement of a conversational knowledge of a language. As some of the stories may appear rather homely, I have to state that they contain words and idioms which will prove most useful to all who are anxious to speak German, and for which they would vainly look in extracts of a higher character.

Certain compilations of this kind contain selections from the English poets; but I have refrained from giving any poetry, because pupils at school ought not to be expected to put into German Shakspeare's poetry, Milton's "Paradise Lost" Dryden's "Alexander's Feast,"

Goldsmith's "Deserted Village." If they succeed in turning English prose into good plain German, they and their teachers may rest and be thankful. A class cannot be expected to consist of literary men and future poets-laureate.

I have given subjects which have been treated by German authors quoted in "The First German Book" and in "German Studies," because it will be at once curious and interesting to see how the writers of both nations have handled the same subject.

With regard to the RENDERINGS which Herr BECKER has prefixed to each of the pieces, he has endeavoured to give neither too many nor too few. When there were grammatical difficulties or idiomatic differences, he has inserted foot-notes, and not unfrequently referred to "German Studies" and "The First German Book," which, along with the present work, form a complete practical course of modern German, uniform in plan and spirit with my French series.

In conclusion, I avail myself of this fresh opportunity to thank those heads of schools and professors of languages who have adopted my different publications. I trust that this new book may be found as useful as its French companions.

ALFRED G. HAVET,

VILLA BOILEAU, AUTEUIL,
PARIS, *July* 1873.

In the spelling of "German Composition," the same principles have been followed as in "The First German Book," which is in accordance with the best modern grammarians (Heyse, &c.) and lexicographers (Sanders, &c.) The chief feature of that mode of spelling is the writing of ff or fs instead of ß , after a *short* vowel.

A. L. BECKER.

CONTENTS.

ENGLISH PROSE TO BE TRANSLATED INTO GERMAN.

	PAGE
1. The Arab in the Desert, . . . J. M. D. MEIKLEJOHN,	3
2. The Parrot, <i>Ibid.</i> ,	4
3. The Philosopher and the Emperor, LORD BACON, . . .	5
4. The Knowledge of Common Things, <i>Boy's Week-day Book</i> ,	5
5. The Horse and the Beetroot, . . . SADLER'S <i>Versions</i> , . . .	7
6. Columbus and the Egg, . . . WASHINGTON IRVING, . . .	8
7. The Human Body and the Five Senses, DR M'CULLOCH'S <i>Reading</i> <i>Book</i> ,	9
8. Lord Chesterfield, WADE'S <i>British History</i> ,	12
9. Greatness of Soul, LORD CHESTERFIELD'S <i>Letters to his Son</i> ,	12
10. Joseph the Second and the Officer, ANONYMOUS,	13
11. Klopstock, A. L. BECKER,	14
12. Frederic the Great and the Soldier, SADLER'S <i>Versions</i> ,	14
13. Frederic the Great and the Miller, TIMBS'S <i>Curiosities of</i> <i>History</i> ,	16

		FACE
14. Frederic the Great and his Page,	ANONYMOUS,	16
15. Bion,	LORD BACON,	18
16. Origin of the word "Sycophant,"	TIMBS'S <i>Curiosities of</i> <i>History,</i>	18
17. Deceived Vanity,	OLIVER GOLDSMITH,	19
18. The Dog,	<i>Ibid.,</i>	20
19. Metals,	MRS BARBAULD,	20
20. Relationship Extraordinary, .	<i>Harper's (American)</i> <i>Magazine,</i>	23
21. Mozart and Haydn, . . .	ANONYMOUS,	24
22. The "Ship at Anchor," .	ANONYMOUS,	25
23. The Glow-worm,	* MRS BARBAULD,	26
24. History of Cotton, . . .	ANONYMOUS,	27
25. Gratitude,	BISHOP HORNE,	29
26. Berlin,	HUGHES'S <i>Geography</i> (additions and changes by A. L. BECKER),	29
27. The Young Philosopher, .	J. AIKIN,	31
28. The Sun,	MRS BARBAULD, . .	36
29. Hamburg,	HUGHES'S <i>Geography</i> (additions and changes by A. L. BECKER),	37
30. Charlemagne as a Legislator,	Dr BREWER, . . .	39
31. Man proposes, God disposes,	ANONYMOUS, . . .	40
32. Gasconades,	<i>Good Things for Railway</i> <i>Readers,</i>	42
33. Pope Sixtus the Fifth, .	AIKIN'S <i>Biographical</i> <i>Dictionary,</i>	42
34. The Force of Labour, .	SMILES'S <i>Self-Help,</i>	44
35. Letter to the Countess of Mar,	LADY WORTLEY MON- TAGUE,	45
36. The Calamities of Genius, .	ANONYMOUS, . . .	45

	PAGE
37. Letter to Dr Pigot, . . .	LORD BYRON, . . . 47
38. Too much for the Whistle, .	B. FRANKLIN, . . . 48
39. The Dervise and the Camel,	COLTON'S <i>Lacon</i> , . . . 49
40. The Conjuror and the Tailor,	GOLDSMITH, . . . 52
41. Tit for Tat, . . .	ANONYMOUS, . . . 53
42. The Horse-Shoe Nail, . .	CONSTABLE'S <i>English Reading-Book</i> , . . . 54
43. The Iron Mask, . . .	MAUNDER'S <i>Biographical Treasury</i> , . . . 56
44. The Monkey and the two Cats,	DODSLEY, . . . 58
45. The Old Man and his Ass, .	HORACE WALPOLE, . . . 59
46. Geography, . . .	CRAMPTON AND TURNER'S <i>Geographical Reading-Book</i> , . . . 61
47. Rivers, . . .	<i>Ibid.</i> , . . . 63
48. A Clergyman's Repartee, .	ANONYMOUS, . . . 64
49. The Steppes, . . .	MRS SOMERVILLE, . . . 65
50. The Dervise, . . .	ADDISON, . . . 67
51. Miners, . . .	H. MEDLOCK'S <i>Translation of Schoedler</i> , . . . 68
52. A Son to his Mother, . .	BYRON, . . . 70
53. Ledyard the Traveller, . .	MAUNDER'S <i>Biographical Treasury</i> , . . . 71
54. George Primrose wishes to teach the Dutch English, . .	GOLDSMITH'S <i>Vicar of Wakefield</i> , . . . 72
55. England and Scotland, . .	WALTER SCOTT'S <i>Tales of a Grandfather</i> , . . . 74
56. Mahomet's Miracles, . .	GIBBON'S <i>Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire</i> , . . . 76
57. A Letter to Sir Joshua Reynolds,	OLIVER GOLDSMITH, . . . 77
58. The Shield, . . .	BEAUMONT, . . . 79

	PAOE
59. Letter to Joseph Hill, . . .	COWPER, . . . 82
60. The Love of our Country, . .	SYDNEY SMITH, . . 84
61. Presence of Mind, . . .	GOLDWIN SMITH'S <i>Irish History and Character</i> , 85
62. Schiller,	A. L. BECKER, . . 86
63. The Jew,	SHAKSPEARE, <i>The Merchant of Venice</i> , . 87
64. The Jew Shylock and Bassanio, .	<i>Ibid.</i> , 88
65. Hunting in the Middle Ages, . .	H. HALLAM, . . . 90
66. Gulliver's Adventures in Brobdignag,	SWIFT, 91
67. Village Inn Scene, . . .	G. FARQUHAR, . . 93
68. Mary Stuart,	ROBERTSON'S <i>History of Scotland</i> , . . . 97
69. Progress of Towne, . . .	JOHN M'CULLOCH, . 100
70. The Duke of Alva, . . .	PRESCOTT'S <i>History of the Reign of Philip the Second</i> , . . . 102
71. History,	TIMBS'S <i>Curiosities of History</i> , . . . 104
72. Conversation between two Young Englishmen at Rome, . .	CHESTERFIELD to his Son, 106
73. The Miser and his Cook, . .	FIELDING, . . . 110
74. Letter to Miss Irving, . .	WASHINGTON IRVING, 113
75. Robinson Crusoe's Clothes and Umbrella,	DE FOE, 116
76. The Country Inn, . . .	JOANNA BAILLIE, . 118
77. Character of William III., . .	BURNET, 122
78. Frederic the Great, . . .	LORD MACAULAY, . 124
79. Goethe's Birth and Early Youth, .	LEWES'S <i>Story of Goethe's Life</i> , 128
80. Goethe and Schiller, . . .	<i>Ibid.</i> , 130

	PAGE
81. How the Spider makes its Web, GOLDSMITH, . . .	132
82. Robinson Crusoe's First Alarm, DE FOE, . . .	133
83. Goethe's Death, . . . LEWES, . . .	134
84. Columbus at the Sight of Land, WASHINGTON IRVING,	136
85. The Jester and the Swineherd, WALTER SCOTT'S <i>Ivanhoe</i> ,	137
86. Value of Time and Money, CHESTERFIELD, . .	139
87. Castles in the Air, . . . ADDISON, . . .	141
88. Emigrating to Australia, . . . LORD LYTTON, . .	144
89. Letter to the Countess of Mar, LADY MONTAGUE, .	146
90. Country Life, . . . GOLDSMITH, . . .	148
91. Oliver Twist's Journey to London, CHARLES DICKENS, . .	149
92. On Friedrich Schiller, . . . THOMAS CARLYLE, . .	152
93. A Family in Distress, . . . CHARLES DICKENS'S <i>Nicholas Nickleby</i> , . . .	154
94. The Armada, GLEIG,	159
95. The English Language, . . . GRAHAM, . . .	162
96. The Legacy, ANONYMOUS, . . .	163
97. Byron, LORD MACAULAY, . .	166
98. Of Studies, LORD BACON, . . .	169
99. A Trip to Scarborough, . . . SHERIDAN, . . .	170
100. The Influence of Books, . . . SOUTHEY, . . .	174

DIRECTIONS.

Each Extract should occupy part of Two Lessons.

First Day.—The pupils bring to the class the German translation of the extract which they have written at home in pencil; they read it to the master, who corrects orally all errors and misconstructions, the pupils altering accordingly with pencil. When the whole piece has been thus corrected, it is read out once more to the master, who tells his pupils to bring it next day carefully written in ink, with sufficient space for corrections.

Second Day.—The pupils bring the German translation in ink, and read it out or give it to the master, who finally corrects it. After this is done, they take their books, and translate for the last time the English extract into German, without looking at their translation. By carefully pursuing this system, the pupils will acquire the power of turning English into German at sight, and will gradually do so with almost the same fluency as if they were using their own language.

ALFRED G. HAVET.

ENGLISH INTO GERMAN;

BEING

PROSE SPECIMENS FROM BRITISH AND
AMERICAN AUTHORS

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO GERMAN

WITH THE ASSISTANCE OF RENDERINGS AND REMARKS ON THE IDIOMS
AND PECULIARITIES OF BOTH LANGUAGES.

INTERESTING AND INSTRUCTIVE EXTRACTS

TO BE

TRANSLATED INTO GERMAN.



1. THE ARAB IN THE DESERT.*

Der Araber in der Wüste.—¹ Had lost his way, hatte sich verirrt.
² Had he wandered about, war er umhergeirrt. ³ Schon. ⁴ Vor Hunger,
or Hungerß. ⁵ Saw he. ⁶ Wassergruben. ⁷ Aus. ⁸ Tränken. ⁹ Der-
selbe. ¹⁰ His heart beat with, während ihm das Herz vor Erwartung schlug.
¹¹ Dates, &c., das sind Datteln.

An Arab had lost his way¹ in the desert. Two days had he wandered about² without finding anything to eat; and he was now³ in danger of perishing of hunger⁴. Suddenly he saw⁵ one of those pools of water⁶ at⁷ which travellers water⁸ their camels, and he ran to it as fast as his tired limbs could carry him. What was his delight to see,† lying upon the bank of the pool, a leathern bag! He was sure it⁹ contained food. He took it up, while his heart beat with expectation¹⁰. “Dates¹¹! I hope,” he

* See „Der hungrige Araber“ in HAVET and SCHRUMPF’S “First German Book,” p. 158.

† Translate, “When he . . . saw.” Construe according to HAVET and SCHRUMPF’S “First German Book,” 41st lesson, p. 75.

¹² Beim Worte des Propheten. ¹³ Ohnmächtig. ¹⁴ Zu Boden.

cried. "Nuts! I think!! Pearls! by the beard of the Prophet¹²!!!" and the poor Arab sank fainting¹³ on the ground¹⁴.—J. M. D. MEIKLEJOHN.

2. THE PARROT.

Der Papagei.—¹To all the questions, &c., auf alle Fragen, die man ihm stellte. ² Answered it (he). ³ There is no doubt about it, ohne Zweifel. ⁴ Gines Tages. ⁵ Fixed the price at twenty pounds, setzte den Preis zu zwanzig Pfund fest. ⁶ Pres. Subj. ⁷ Delighted with, entzückt über. ⁸ Nach Hause. ⁹ She repented of her bargain, bereute sie ihren Handel. ¹⁰ Zu sich selbst. ¹¹ For having thrown away, daß sie . . . weggeworfen habe. ¹² Rief.

A sailor had a parrot. To all the questions they asked it¹, it² answered, "There is no doubt about it³." One day⁴ he took it to the market to sell it, and fixed the price at twenty pounds⁵. A woman asked the parrot if it was⁶ worth twenty pounds. It replied, "There is no doubt about it." She, delighted with⁷ the bird, bought it, and carried it home⁸. Some time after, she repented of her bargain⁹, and said aloud to herself¹⁰ that she was a fool for having thrown her money away¹¹. "There is no doubt about it," sung out¹² the bird.—J. M. D. MEIKLEJOHN.

3. THE PHILOSOPHER AND THE EMPEROR.

Der Philosoph und der Kaiser.—¹ Es. ² Disputirte. ³ But weakly, nur schwach. ⁴ Mich dünkt. ⁵ You were not like yourself, du glichest dir selbst nicht. ⁶ The other day, neulich. ⁷ In . . . emperor, als du mit dem Kaiser disputirtest. ⁸ Ich hätte . . . können. ⁹ Wolltest du, daß ich . . . ¹⁰ Befehlsgt.

There¹ was a philosopher that disputed² with Augustus the emperor, and did it but weakly³. One of his friends that stood by afterwards said to him, "Methinks⁴ you were not like yourself⁵, the other day⁶, in argument with the Emperor⁷. I could have⁸ answered better (myself)."—"Why," said the philosopher, "would you have me⁹ contend with him who commands¹⁰ thirty legions?"—BACON.

4. THE KNOWLEDGE OF COMMON THINGS.

Die Kenntniß gewöhnlicher Dinge.—¹ I have often been surprised, ich wundere mich oft. ² Wenn ich . . . ³ In. ⁴ Ought to have known, wissen sollten. ⁵ Neulich. ⁶ Eight years old, von acht Jahren. ⁷ Und. ⁸ Pres. Subj. ⁹ Was equally ignorant, wußte gleichfalls nicht. ¹⁰ Aus.

(I.) I have often been surprised¹, when² talking with boys, to find them so ignorant of³ many things which they ought to have known⁴ as well as their own names. The other day⁵, I was questioning a boy, eight years old⁶, who did not know the number of days, weeks, or⁷ months in the year. He could not tell whether the sun rose⁸ in the east or in the west, and was equally ignorant⁹ whether his jacket was made of¹⁰ hemp, flax, or wool.

(II.) Every boy ought to know that he has five senses, seeing, hearing, smelling, feeling, and tasting; that the

¹⁰ Jahreszeiten. ¹² Sich bewegt. ¹³ Besteht — besteht, to be composed of . . . aus . . . ¹⁴ Himmelsgegenben. ¹⁵ Such as, wie zum Beispiel. ¹⁶ Are . . . translate: daß man . . . ¹⁷ Wirklich. ¹⁸ Aus Weizenmehl. ¹⁹ Yeast, Gese. ²⁰ It makes light bread, das Brod leicht wird. ²¹ Weigemisch. ²² Passover cakes, Mañenfuchen. ²³ The biscuits eaten by . . . der Schiffsweiback, welcher, &c. . . wird. ²⁴ Ungefäuert. ²⁵ Sehr bald. ²⁶ Things in common use, allgemein gebräuchliche Dinge.

year has four seasons¹⁰, spring, summer, autumn, and winter; that the earth turns on its axis, and travels¹² round the sun; that the world is composed of¹³ land and water, and divided into five parts, Europe, Asia, Africa, America, and Oceania; that there are * four cardinal points¹⁴, east, west, north, and south; that metals, such as¹⁵ gold and silver and lead are dug out of the earth; and that diamonds are found¹⁶ on the land, and pearls in the sea. †

(III.) That boy must be ignorant indeed¹⁷ who does not know that bread is made of the flour of wheat¹⁸, butter from cream, and cheese from milk; that when flour is mingled with yeast¹⁹ it makes light bread²⁰, and that when no yeast is used²¹ the bread is heavy.‡ The passover cakes²² of the Jews, the biscuits²³ eaten by sailors, and the barley bread of Scotland, are all unleavened²⁴. Boys ought, at an early age²⁵, to be acquainted with such things as are in common use²⁶; but I have often found it necessary to explain to them that sugar is made from the juice

* Compare with HAVET and SCHRUMPF's "First German Book," 59th lesson, p. 112.

† Sea, das Meer, die See—plur. die Meere, for both; der See, means the lake—plur. die Seen.

‡ Read 41st lesson in HAVET and SCHRUMPF's "First German Book," p. 75.

²⁶ In the Indies, in Indien. ²⁷ Strauch. ²⁸ The cocoa, der Kofos.
²⁹ Apfelwein. ³⁰ Birnmoft. ³¹ Juice of the grape, Traubensaft. ³² Is
distilled, beftillirt wird. ³³ In Weftindien. ³⁴ Something like a peach,
der Pfirfiche ähnlich.

of the sugar-cane, which grows in the Indies²⁶; that tea
is the dried leaf of a shrub which grows in China; that
coffee is the berry of a bush²⁷ growing in Arabia and the
West Indies; and that chocolate is manufactured from the
seed of the cocoa²⁸, a plant of South America.

(IV.) Many boys know very well that beer is made
from malt and hops, cider²⁹ from apples, and perry³⁰
from pears, who do not know that wine is the juice of the
grape³¹, that brandy is distilled³² from wine, and rum
from the juice of the sugar-cane. And they are equally
ignorant that oranges, citrons, and lemons grow in Spain
and the West Indies³³, and spices in the East Indies and
other parts; that pepper and cloves are fruits of shrubs,
nutmegs (*sing.*) the kernels (*sing.*) of a fruit something
like a peach³⁴, cinnamon the bark of a tree, and ginger
and rhubarb (are) the roots of plants.—*Boys' Week-day
Book.*

5. THE HORSE AND THE BEETROOT

Das Pferd und die Runkelrübe.—¹ Ludwig. ² After the acces-
sion of this prince to the throne of France, nachdem dieser Prinz
König von Frankreich geworden. ³ Ueberreichte ihm. ⁴ Runkelrübe.

(I.) When Louis¹ the Eleventh. was dauphin, he used
frequently in his walks to visit the family of a peasant,
and partake of their frugal meal. Some time after the
accession of this prince to the throne of France², the
peasant presented him³ an extraordinary beetroot⁴, the

⁵ Ein Erzeugniß seines Gartens. ⁶ Ländliche. ⁷ Thaler. ⁸ Der Herr des Dorfes. ⁹ Kaufte. ¹⁰ Polite attention, Artigkeit. ¹¹ An admirer, &c., ein Liebhaber von Naturprodukten. ¹² Which cannot be matched, die ihres Gleichen sucht. ¹³ I am happy, ich schätze mich glücklich.

production of his garden⁵. Louis, to reward the poor man for his attention, and to show that he had not forgotten the rustic⁶ cottage, gave him a thousand crowns⁷.

(II.) The village squire⁸, on hearing of the peasant's (good) luck, thought that if he gave a good horse to the king, his fortune would be made. He therefore procured⁹ a very handsome one, went to the palace, and begged the king to do him the honour of accepting it. Louis thanked him for his polite attention¹⁰, and ordered one of his pages to fetch the beetroot. When it was brought, he presented it to the squire, saying—

“Sir, as you seem to be an admirer of the works of nature¹¹, I beg you to accept one of its most extraordinary productions. I paid (*perf.*) a thousand crowns for this root, which cannot be matched¹², and I am happy¹³ to have so good an opportunity of rewarding your disinterested loyalty.”—SADLER'S *Versions*.

6. COLUMBUS AND THE EGG.*

Das Ei des Kolumbus.—¹ Anwies. ² Had him served with . . . und ihn mit einer Formlichkeit behandelte, welche man in jenen streng pünktlichen Zeiten gegen Fürsten beobachtete.

Pedro Gonzalez de Mendoza, the Grand Cardinal of Spain, invited Columbus to a banquet, where † he assigned¹ him the most honourable place at table, and had him served²

* See HAVET and SCHRUMPF'S "German Studies," pp. 10 and 11, „Das Ei des Kolumbus."

† Compare HAVET and SCHRUMPF'S "First German Book," 41st lesson, p. 75.

³ Soll. ⁴ Die Geschichte mit dem Ei. ⁵ Ein leichter Kopf von einem Hösling.
⁶ Ausländer ⁷ Ohne Umstände. ⁸ Who would have been capable of
the enterprise, die das Unternehmen hätten ausführen können. ⁹ Hierauf.
¹⁰ Gab. ¹¹ Sondern. ¹² Hierauf. ¹³ So daß . . . ¹⁴ Auf dem einge-
brochenen Ende. ¹⁵ Indem er so in einfacher Weise zeigte. ¹⁶ Nachdem.
¹⁷ Sei.

with ceremonies which in those punctilious times were observed towards sovereigns. At this repast is said ³ to have occurred the well-known incident ⁴ of the egg. A shallow courtier ⁵ present, impatient of the honours paid to Columbus, and meanly jealous of him as a foreigner ⁶, abruptly ⁷ asked him whether he thought that, in case he had not discovered the Indies, there were not other men who would have been capable of the enterprise ⁸. To this ⁹ Columbus made ¹⁰ no immediate answer; but ¹¹ taking an egg, invited the company to make it stand upon one end. Every one attempted it, but in vain; whereupon ¹² he struck it upon the table so as to ¹³ break the end, and left it standing on the broken part ¹⁴, illustrating in this simple manner ¹⁵, that when ¹⁶ he had once shown the way to the New World, nothing was ¹⁷ easier than to follow it.
—WASHINGTON IRVING.

7. THE HUMAN BODY AND THE FIVE SENSES.*

Die Gestalt, the figure, form.	Das Gehirn, the brain.
Das Gesicht, } the face,	Die Wange, the cheek.
Das Antlitz, } countenance.	Der Mund, the mouth.
Der Kopf, } the head.	Die Kinnlade, the jawbone.
Das Haupt, }	Das Kinn, the chin.
Der Schädel, the skull.	Der Gaumen, the palate.
Die Stirne, the forehead.	Der Lippe, the lip (pl. n.)
Das Haar, the hair.	Die Zunge, the tongue.

* See HAYET and SCHRUMPF'S "German Studies," Lessons 23 and 24, „Der menschliche Körper;" also pp. 3 to 6 of the same work, „Die fünf Sinne," „Vorzüge der Sinne."

Die Zähne, the teeth.	Die Nasenlöcher, the nostrils.
Der Hals, the neck.	Der Ellenbogen, the elbow.
Die Kehle, the throat.	Das Handgelenke, the wrist.
Die Brust, the chest.	Der Puls, the pulse.
Das Herz, the heart.	Die Hand, the hand.
Die Lunge, the lungs.	Der Finger, the finger.
Der Magen, the stomach.	Die Nägel, the nails.
Die Schultern, the shoulders.	Das Bein, the leg.
Der Arm, the arm.	Das Knie, the knee.
Die Gesichtsfarbe, the complexion.	Die Wade, the calf.
Das Auge, the eye.	Der Fuß, the foot.
Das Augenlid, the eyelid.	Der Knöchel, the ankle.
Die Wimpern, the lashes.	Der Rist, the instep.
Die Augenbraue, the eyebrow.	Die Ferse, the heel.
Das Ohr, the ear.	Der Rücken, the back.
Die Nase, the nose.	Die Seite, the side.

Der menschliche Leib und die fünf Sinne. — ¹ Der Mensch, ² Steht. ³ He takes hold of, &c., er faßt . . . an. ⁴ Fußsohle. ⁵ Turns. &c., ist nach links und rechts drehbar. ⁶ Der Ober- und Hintertheil. ⁷ In einem beinernen Kasten. ⁸ Vor. ⁹ On each side the ears, auf jeder Seite ein Ohr. ¹⁰ Are shut, &c., können vermittelst der Augenlider geschlossen werden. ¹¹ Vor.

(I.) Man ¹ holds himself upright on his feet. His head is ² erect on his shoulders. He has two arms and two legs. He takes hold of ³ things with his * hands. The sole of his feet ⁴ rests on the ground.

(II.) The head turns to the right and to the left ⁵. The top and back ⁶ of the head are called the skull. Upon it is the hair. Within the head is the brain, which is enclosed there as in a box of bone ⁷. This box secures it against ⁸ blows. On the face are seen the eyes, nose, mouth, chin, and on each side the ears ⁹. The eyes are shut by means of the eyelids ¹⁰, which shelter them from ¹¹ the air and too much light.

* Translates, "with the hands."

¹² Die Stirne. ¹³ Near him, in seiner Nähe. ¹⁴ Beg. ¹⁵ Fühlen.
¹⁶ Are perceived, nahmen wir . . . wahr. ¹⁷ Ranged in two rows,
 in zwei Reihen geordnet. ¹⁸ Which are applied to one another,
 welche auf einander passen. ¹⁹ Reiben wir. ²⁰ Subject last. ²¹ Pos-
 sessive. ²² Zum. ²³ Der Athem. ²⁴ Die Sprache.

(III.) Above the eyes are the eyebrows; higher still is the brow¹². Man sees with his* eyes what is near him¹³; he sees also what is not too far off¹⁴. The nose is between the eyes and the mouth; its two holes¹⁵ are called the nostrils; with the nose are perceived¹⁶ smells. The mouth has two lips, which are both movable. Under the mouth is the chin. Within the mouth are the palate, the tongue, and the teeth. The teeth are fixed in the jawbones, and are ranged in two rows¹⁷, which are applied to one another¹⁸. With the teeth we grind¹⁹ our food; the tongue brings the food under the teeth, and at the same time the spittle moistens it²⁰; it descends afterwards into the throat, and thence into the stomach. While food is in the mouth, the tongue and the palate feel the flavour of it²¹. The mouth serves also for²² speaking; the breath²³ comes from the lungs; the mouth, the lips, the tongue, the teeth, and the palate, form speech²⁴.

(IV.) Man perceives smells by his nose; tastes by his palate; with his ears he hears sounds; with his eyes he sees the colour and motion of bodies; with his skin he touches them. All these means of perceiving the qualities of objects are called the senses. Thus man has five senses:

* The Possessive Adjectives *mein, dein, sein, u. s. w.*, are not so often used in German as in English; they are commonly replaced by the article, when there is no doubt of the person meant by the speaker, especially when parts of the body are spoken of—*e.g.*, The king held the sceptre in *his* hand, der König hielt das Scepter in der Hand.

sight, smell, taste, hearing, and touch.—Dr M'Culloch's *Reading Book*.

8. LORD CHESTERFIELD.

Lord Chesterfield. — ¹ Graf. ² Unter. ³ Celebrated for, &c., wegen seiner feinen Sitten — repeat the possessive. ⁴ Zur. ⁵ An. ⁶ Though reprehensible for, &c., obgleich man ihnen Selbstsucht und eine etwas lockere Richtung vorwerfen kann. ⁷ Bildung. ⁸ Charakter. ⁹ Betragen.

On the twenty-fourth of April 1773, died in his seventy-ninth year, Philip Dormer, Earl¹ of Chesterfield, a nobleman who played a distinguished part in² the reign of George the Second, as courtier, diplomatist, and statesman. He was also celebrated for his polished manners³, wit, and love of⁴ literature. His "Letters to⁵ his Son" are generally known, and though reprehensible for selfishness and laxity⁶, contain useful precepts for the improvement⁷ of the mind, temper⁸, and behaviour⁹.—WADE'S *British History*.

9. GREATNESS OF SOUL.

Seelengröße. — ¹ Macedonien. ² Say, Als Alexander der Große, &c. ³ Persien. ⁴ Mächte. ⁵ Gemahlin. ⁶ Now — might he — nun hätte er zwar. ⁷ Made slaves of them, sie zu Sklaven machen können.

Alexander the Great, king of Macedonia¹, having conquered² Darius, king of Persia³, took⁴ an infinite number of prisoners, among others, the wife⁵ and mother of of Darins. Now, according to the laws of war, he might⁶ have made slaves of them⁷; but he had too much

⁸ Ehrenbezeugungen. ⁹ Achtung. ¹⁰ An seiner Statt. ¹¹ Herne hieraus.
¹² Lob zu zollen.

greatness of soul to make a bad use of his victory; he therefore treated them as queens, and showed them the same attentions⁸ and (the same) respect⁹ as if he had been their subject; (which), Darius hearing, said that Alexander deserved to be victorious, and that he was (*pres.*) alone worthy to reign in his stead¹⁰. Observe by this¹¹ how virtue and greatness of soul compel even enemies to bestow praise¹².—LORD CHESTERFIELD'S *Letters to his Son*.

10. JOSEPH THE SECOND AND THE OFFICER.

Joseph der Zweite und der österreichische Offizier. — ¹Österreichischer. ²Jahrgelb. ³Unzureichend. ⁴To wait upon . . . dem Kaiser seine Aufwartung zu machen. ⁵Entreated his compassion, bat ihn um Erbarmen; flehte sein Erbarmen an. ⁶Lebentige. ⁷Joseph, &c.—Joseph wollte wissen, ob die Sache sich so verhalte. ⁸Verfleibet. ⁹Eine Waise. ¹⁰From motives of charity, aus Mitleiden. ¹¹Immediately ordered, ließ auf der Stelle . . . geben.

An old Austrian¹ officer, who had but a small pension², that was insufficient³ for the demands of his family, came to wait on the emperor⁴. He explained his indigent condition, and entreated his compassion⁵, adding that he had ten children alive⁶. Joseph, desirous to know the certainty of this affair⁷, went to the officer's house in disguise⁸, and instead of ten found eleven children. "Why eleven?" "It is a poor orphan⁹," replied the officer, "that I took into my house from motives of charity¹⁰." The prince immediately ordered¹¹ a hundred florins to be given to each of the children.—ANONYMOUS.

11. KLOPSTOCK.

Klopstock. — ¹ Friedrich Gottlob. ² Wurde. ³ Zu or in. ⁴ Provinz Sachsen. ⁵ Preußen. ⁶ Wird. ⁷ Justly, mit Recht. ⁸ Der neuern, ⁹ Oben, f. ¹⁰ Werden verbientermaßen zu . . . gerechnet. ¹¹ Masterpieces, Meisterwerke. ¹² Der Iyrischen Dichtkunst (or Poesie). ¹³ Der Messias. ¹⁴ Although abounding in, obſchon reich an . . . ¹⁵ Owing to, wegen (gen.) ¹⁶ More talked of, mehr genannt.

Frederic Gottlob ¹ Klopstock was ² born on the second (of) July 1724, at ³ Quedlinburg, province of Saxony ⁴, Prussia ⁵, and died in Hamburg, March 14th, 1803. He is ⁶ justly ⁷ considered as the patriarch of the modern ⁸ German poets. His "*Odes*" ⁹ deservedly rank ¹⁰ among the masterpieces ¹¹ of lyric poetry ¹². The "*Messiah*" ¹³, although abounding ¹⁴ in splendid passages, is ⁶, owing ¹⁵ to its length, more talked ¹⁶ of than read.—A. L. BECKER.

12. FREDERICK THE GREAT AND THE SOLDIER.

Friedrich der Große und der Soldat.—¹ Paid so much attention to, &c., Friedrich dem Großen lag sein Garderegiment ſo ſehr am Herzen. ² Sobald. ³ Einen Rekruten.

Frederick the Great paid so much attention to his regiment of Guards ¹ that he knew personally every one of his soldiers. Whenever ² he saw a fresh one ³, he used to put the three following questions to him:—“(1st.) How old are you? (2d.) How long have you been* in my ser-

* The Germans, as well as the French, employ the *Present Tense* to mark a state or action still going on at the time they speak, whereas the English use the compound form of the *Past Tense*; hence we say here, Wie lange ſind Sie ſchon in meinem Dienſte? —See HAVET'S "French Class-Book," p. 317, No. 710.

⁴ Sind Sie mit Ihrem Solde und mit Ihrer Behandlung zufrieden? ⁵ Sich zum preussischen Dienste anwerben ließ. ⁶ Und als Friedrich ihn gewahr wurde. ⁷ Bei. ⁸ Inversion. ⁹ Zum Teufel! Einer von uns zwei muß verrückt sein. ¹⁰ According to what he had been taught, wie man ihn gelehrt hatte. ¹¹ Nun. ¹² Daß einer meiner Soldaten mich einen Narren geheißen hat. ¹³ Karl! was meinst du damit? ¹⁴ Der arme Burfsche. ¹⁵ Auf. ¹⁶ Ich zweifle nicht. ¹⁷ Werden.

vice (m.)? (3d.) Are you satisfied with your pay and treatment ⁴?

It happened that a young Frenchman, who did not understand three words (of) German, enlisted into the Prussian service ⁵, and Frederick, on seeing him ⁶, put the usual questions. The soldier had learnt the answers, but only in the order which the king generally followed.

Unfortunately, on ⁷ this occasion Frederick began ⁸ by the second question, "How long have you been in my service?"—"Twenty-one years," replied the Frenchman.—"What!" said the king. "How old are you, then?"—"One year," was the reply.—"Upon my word," said Frederick, "you or I must be mad ⁹."—"Both," replied the soldier, according to what he had been taught ¹⁰.—"Well ¹¹," said the astonished monarch, "this is the first time that I ever was called a madman by one of my guards ¹²: what do you mean by it, sir ¹³?"—The poor fellow ¹⁴, seeing the king enraged, told him, in ¹⁵ French, that he did not understand a word of German.—"Oh! is it so?" said Frederick; "well, learn it as soon as possible, and I have no doubt ¹⁶ you will make ¹⁷ a very good soldier."—SADLER'S *Versions*.

13. FREDERICK THE GREAT AND THE MILLER.

Friedrich der Große und der Müller. — ¹ Imperf. Pass. ² Zeigte. ³ Wegnahm. ⁴ Ordered . . . into his presence, ließ . . . vor sich kommen. ⁵ Welchen Preis auch immer. ⁶ Auf. ⁷ Wohl. ⁸ Das könnte geschehen. ⁹ To find, da er sah. ¹⁰ Loaded with presents, reichlich beschenkt.

While the palace of Sans-Souci was being built¹, the architect pointed out² to the king a mill which destroyed³ the view from one of the palace apartments. The king ordered the proprietor of the mill into his presence⁴, and proposed to purchase it at the price (which) he should demand. But the miller refused to sell it to Frederick, whatever price⁵ he would give him. The monarch was not prepared for⁶ this obstinate refusal.

"You know well enough⁷," said he to the man, "(that) I could take it away from you without pay (ing)."

"That might be⁸," said the miller, "if we had no magistrates at Berlin."

This daring reply brought Frederick to himself; he smiled to find⁹ (that) his subjects confided in his justice, and he sent the miller away loaded with presents¹⁰. — TIMBS'S *Curiosities of History*.

14. FREDERICK THE GREAT AND HIS PAGE*.

Friedrich der Große und sein Geflehnabe. — ¹ Kennt.

Who does not† know¹ the great king Frederick the Second, who sat on the throne of Prussia from 1740 to

* See HAVET and SCHRUMPF'S "German Studies," pp. 16 and 17, „Friedrich der Große und der Geflehnabe."

† The negative nicht always follows the direct object (accusative) in German.

² Liebe. ³ In going to awake him, als er ihn wecken wollte. ⁴ Ein beschriebenes Papier. ⁵ It to be, daßes . . . war. ⁶ Liebevoller. ⁷ By his, indem er —. ⁸ Ermahnte. ⁹ Des Herrn. ¹⁰ Sogleich. ¹¹ Eine Rolle Ducaten. ¹² Sachte. ¹³ And indeed so loudly, und diesmal so laut. ¹⁴ Verlegen. ¹⁵ By chance, zufällig. ¹⁶ Indem er, &c. . . . ¹⁷ Thunderstruck, wie vom Donner gerührt.

1786? Here is an anecdote, wherein the king rewards a child's affection ² to his mother.

Once, after a sleepless night, the king rang * the bell very early in the morning; and when he saw that nobody was coming, he went to the ante-chamber, and found his page sleeping on a chair. In going to awake him ³, he saw a written paper ⁴ hanging † out of his pocket. This excited his curiosity and attention. He drew it out, and found it to be ⁵ a letter from the page's mother, in which she thanked him for his kind ⁶ affection, which he had proved again ‡ by ⁷ sending her the half of his wages; and she reminded ⁸ him to continue always faithful to the king, and the recompense of the Lord ⁹ would not fail him. The king went immediately ¹⁰ back to his room and fetched a roll of ducats ¹¹, which he put gently ¹² (along) with the letter into the page's pocket. Now he rang again, and indeed so loudly ¹³, that the page awoke, and ran into the king's chamber.

“Thou hast surely been sleeping,” said the king. The page, although a little embarrassed ¹⁴, confessed it; then by chance ¹⁵ putting ¹⁶ his hand into his pocket, he felt there a roll of money. There he stood, thunderstruck ¹⁷,

* When adverbial expressions begin the sentence, as above; Einst nach einer schlaflosen Nacht, the verb goes before the subject; hence, Klingelte der König. See HAYET and SCHRUMPF'S “German Studies,” pp. 17 and 18.

† Infinitive,

‡ Perf. Subj.

¹⁸ Nachdem er sich ein wenig erholt hatte. ¹⁹ Majestät! man will mich zu Grunde richten. ²⁰ Whenever, daß wenn . . . ²¹ Sorgen.

and unable to speak a word. After having recovered ¹⁸ a little, he fell at the feet of the king, and cried, "Your Majesty, my ruin is intended ¹⁹! I know nothing of the money!"

The king quieted him, and said, "Know, my friend, whenever ²⁰ fortune comes, it comes when we sleep; send this money to your mother, and tell her that I will provide ²¹ for you both."—ANONYMOUS.

15. BION.

¹ Was shown, man zeigte. ² Tables of pictures, Botivtafeln. ³ As, weicht. ⁴ Made vows, Gelübde gemacht. ⁵ How, was. ⁶ Ay, o ja. ⁷ Have been drowned, ertrunken sind.

Bion was shown ¹ in a temple of Neptune* many tables of pictures ² of such as ³ had in tempests made vows ⁴ to Neptune, and were saved from shipwreck, and was asked, "How ⁵ say you now? Do you not acknowledge the power of the Gods?" But saith he, "Ay ⁶; but where are they painted that have been drowned ⁷ after their vows?"—BACON.

16. ORIGIN OF THE WORD "SYCOPHANT."

Ursprung des Wortes Sycophant. — ¹ Tale-bearer, Dörenbläser. ² False accuser, Verläumber. ³ Parasite, Schmarotzer. ⁴ Smell-feast, ungeteuerer Gast. ⁵ Arose, entstand.

Sycophant—a tale-bearer ¹, a false accuser ², a deceiver, a parasite ³, a smell-feast ⁴. The name arose ⁵ upon this

* See HAVET and SCHRUMPF'S "First German Book," 17th lesson, No. 3.

⁶ Territory, Gebiet. ⁷ Such as, diejenigen, welche. ⁸ Gave information of those that, jene anzeigten, die.

occasion—There was an act in Athens that none should transport figs out of the territory ⁶ of Attica. Such as ⁷ gave information of those that ⁸, contrary to this law, conveyed figs into other parts, were termed Sycophants, from *sycos*, which is in Greek a fig.—TIMBS.

17. DECEIVED VANITY.

Retrogene Eitelkeit. — ¹ Resigned all his posts, legte alle seine Aemter nieder. ² A fit of resentment, in einem Anfall von Rachegefühl. ³ Upon, nach. ⁴ Appeared, sich zeigte (Pres. Subj.). ⁵ To which, hierauf. ⁶ Ay, aha! ⁷ Would make a bustle, würden sich rühren. ⁸ All petitioning, alle bitten.

A minister, in the reign of Charles II., upon a certain occasion, resigned all his posts¹, and retired into the country in a fit of resentment². But as he had not given the world entirely up with his ambition, he sent a messenger to town to see how the courtiers would bear his resignation. Upon³ the messenger's return, he was asked whether there appeared⁴ any commotion at Court, to which he replied⁵ there were very great ones. "Ay⁶," says the minister, "I knew my friends would make a bustle⁷. All petitioning⁸ the king for my restoration, I presume?" "No, sir," replied the messenger; "they are only petitioning his majesty to be put in your place."—GOLDSMITH.

18. THE DOG.

¹ Der Hund. — ¹To, von. ² Attempts to cultivate, sich (um) bemüht. ³ He looks, schaut er auf. ⁴ With a speaking eye, mit ausdrucksvollem Auge. ⁵ For, um. ⁶ Exerts, verrichtet. ⁷ Abate, erschüttern. ⁸ Studious, bemüht. ⁹ Still, immer. ¹⁰ How unkind then, wie grausam ist es darum. ¹¹ To claim the protection of man, um den Schutz des Menschen für sich in Anspruch zu nehmen. ¹² Ungrateful return, herzlose Vergeltung.

A dog is an honest creature, and I am a friend to¹ dogs. Of all the beasts that graze the lawn or hunt the forest,* a dog is the only animal that, leaving his fellows, attempts to cultivate² the friendship of man. To man he looks³ in all his necessity with a speaking eye⁴ for⁵ assistance; exerts⁶ for him all the little service in his power with cheerfulness and pleasure; for him he bears famine and fatigue with patience and resignation; no injuries can abate⁷ his fidelity; no distress induce him to forsake his benefactor; studious⁸ to please, and fearing to offend, he is still⁹ a humble, steadfast dependant; and in him alone fawning is not flattery. How unkind, then¹⁰, to torture this faithful creature, who has left the forest to claim the protection of man¹¹! how ungrateful a return¹² to the trusty animal for all its services.—GOLDSMITH.

19. METALS.+

Die Metalle.—¹Article. ²Dunkelgelb. ³Auch ist es.

(I.) ¹Gold is of a deep yellow² colour. It is very pretty and bright, and it is³ exceedingly heavy. Sovereigns

* Translate, "Graze on the lawn, or hunt in the forest."

+ See HAVET and SCHRUMPF's "German Studies," Lesson 67, „Mineralien."

⁴ Golben. ⁵ Die Bitterrahmen. ⁶ Gilt with gold, vergoldet. ⁷ Sehr dünn geschlagenes Gold. ⁸ Substit. von. ⁹ Sechspfennigstücke. ¹⁰ Das Messing. ¹¹ Dem Golbe ähnlich. ¹² Das Pfännchen. ¹³ Die Thürschlöffer. ¹⁴ Grünspan, m. ¹⁵ You would die. ¹⁶ Dasselbe. ¹⁷ For it makes us, &c., denn es dient uns zu gar vielen Dingen. ¹⁸ Die Röhren. ¹⁹ Bratpfieß. ²⁰ Ebenfalls (last). ²¹ Schmilzt das Eisen im Feuer. ²² Glühroth. ²³ To bend, sich biegen—use Pres. Ind., or, man kann . . . biegen.

and half-sovereigns are made of gold. This watch is gold ⁴, and the picture-frames ⁵ are gilt with gold ⁶. Here is leaf-gold. What is leaf-gold? It is gold beat very thin ⁷, thinner than leaves of paper.

Silver is white and shining. The spoons are ⁸ silver; and crowns, and half-crowns, and shillings, and sixpences⁹, are made of silver.

Copper is red. The kettle is made of copper; and brass¹⁰ is made of copper. Brass is bright and yellow, like gold¹¹ almost. The saucepan¹² is made of brass; and the locks upon the doors¹³, and this candlestick. What is this green upon the saucepan? It is rusty; the green is verdigris¹⁴; it would kill you¹⁵ if you were to eat it (wenn . . . davon . . .)

(II.) Iron is very hard. It is not pretty; but I do not know what we should do without it¹⁶, for it makes us a great many things¹⁷. Go and ask the cook¹⁸ whether she can roast her meat without a spit¹⁹. But the spit is made of iron; and so²⁰ are the tongs, and the poker, and shovel. Go and ask Dobbin if he can plough without the ploughshare? He says no, he cannot (er sagt Nein). But the ploughshare is made of iron. Will iron melt in the fire²¹? Put the poker in and try. Well, is it melted? No; but it is redhot²², and soft; it will bend²³. Iron will

²⁴ Außerordentlich. ²⁵ Wenn es sehr lange darin ist. ²⁶ Zum Schmiede. ²⁷ Was thut er? ²⁸ Eine Schmiede. ²⁹ Legt. ³⁰ Fliegen umher. ³¹ Hufeisen. ³² To try, versuchen. ³³ Some, etwas davon. ³⁴ Covered with tin, überzinnnt.

melt in a very very ²⁴ hot fire when it has been in a great while ²⁵. Come let us go to the smith's shop ²⁶. What is he doing ²⁷? He has a forge ²⁸: he blows the fire with a great pair of bellows (*sing.*) to make the iron hot. Now he takes it out with the tongs, and puts ²⁹ it upon the anvil. Now he beats it with a hammer. How hard he works! The sparks fly about ³⁰; pretty bright sparks. What is the blacksmith making? He is making nails, and horse-shoes ³¹, and a great many things.—Steel is made of iron, and knives and scissors are made of steel.

(III.) Lead is soft, and very heavy. Here is a piece; lift it. The spout is lead, and the cistern is lead, and bullets are made of lead. Will lead melt in the fire? Try ³²; put some ³³ on the shovel; hold it over the fire. Now it is all melted. Pour it into this basin of water. How it hisses! What pretty things it has made!

Tin is white and soft. It is bright too. The canisters, and the dripping-pan, are all covered with tin ³⁴.

Quicksilver is very bright like silver; and it is very heavy. See how its runs about! you cannot catch it. You cannot pick it up. There is quicksilver in the barometer.

Gold, Silver, Copper, Iron, Lead, Tin, Quicksilver, are all Metals. They are all dug out of the ground.—
Mrs BARBAULD.

20. RELATIONSHIP EXTRAORDINARY.*

Merkwürdige Verwandtschaft. — ¹ I got acquainted with, ich machte die Bekanntschaft einer . . . ² Stieftochter. ³ Ich heirathete die Wittne. ⁴ Kurz darauf. ⁵ Fell in love with, verliebte sich in die, &c. ⁶ Schwiegermutter. ⁷ Und zugleich. ⁸ Schwiegertochter. ⁹ Stiefmutter. ¹⁰ Stiefvater. ¹¹ Stiefbruder. ¹² Weil er seine Stiefschwester zur Frau hat. ¹³ Enkel.

I got acquainted with ¹ a young widow, who lived with her stepdaughter ² in the same house. I married ³. My father fell, shortly after it ⁴, in love with ⁵ the stepdaughter of my wife, and married her. My wife became the mother-in-law ⁶ and also^a the daughter-in-law ⁷ of my (own) father; my wife's stepdaughter is my stepmother ⁸, and I am the stepfather ⁹ of my mother-in-law. My stepmother, who is the stepdaughter of my wife, has a boy: he is naturally my stepbrother ¹⁰, because he is son of my father and of my stepmother; but because he is son of my wife's stepdaughter, so is my wife the grandmother of the little boy, and I am the grandfather of my stepbrother. My wife has also a boy; my stepmother is consequently the stepsister of my boy, and is also his grandmother, because he is the child of her stepson; and my father is the brother-in-law ¹¹ of my son, because he has got his stepsister for a wife ¹². I am the brother of my own son, who is the son of my stepmother, I am the brother-in-law of my mother, my wife is the aunt of her own son, my son is the grandson ¹³ of my father, and I am my own grandfather.—*Harper's Magazine.*

* See HAVET and SCHRUMPF'S "German Studies," Lesson 12, "Die Verwandtschaft."

21. MOZART AND HAYDN.*

Mozart und Haydn. — ¹ In Gesellschaft. ² Der erstere — der letztere, or, jener — dieser. ³ Bettete, with the Acc. ⁴ Champagne, sprich „Schampanjer.“ ⁵ That he would not play at sight a piece of music. daß er ein Musikstück . . . nicht vom Blatte weg spielen könne. ⁶ Nachdem er prälubirt hatte. ⁷ An den beiden Enden. ⁸ Spielte die Note mit der Nase. ⁹ Und jedermann brach in Lachen aus. ¹⁰ Noch lächerlicher. ¹¹ Eine Platt-nase.

Mozart and Haydn being † at a party ¹, the former ² laid a wager ³ of six bottles (of) champagne ⁴ with the latter ² that he would not play at sight a piece of music ⁵ which he (Mozart) would compose. Haydn accepted the challenge, and Mozart speedily wrote down a few notes and presented them to Haydn, who, having played a prelude ⁶, exclaimed, “How do you think I can ‡ play that? My hands are at each extremity ⁷ of the piano, and there is at the same time a note (f.) in the middle.” — “Does that stop you?” said Mozart. “Well, you shall see.” On coming to the difficult passage, Mozart, without stopping, struck § the note ⁸ in the middle of the piano with his nose, and every one burst out laughing ⁹. What made the act more ridiculous ¹⁰ was, that Haydn had a flat nose ¹¹, while Mozart’s was a long one. Haydn therefore paid for

* Mozart, geboren zu Salzburg 1756–1791. Haydn, ein ausgezeichnete Komponist, wurde im Jahre 1732 geboren und starb im Jahre 1809. Mozart, berühmt besonders durch seine melodiereichen Opern; Haydn durch seine Symphonien und Oratorien. See “German Studies,” Lesson 68, „Von der Musik.“

† The participle to be replaced by the corresponding finite verb with the conjunction *als*.

‡ Compare HAVET and SCHRUMPF’S “First German Book,” 41st lesson, No. 2.

§ “Struck Mozart,” &c. See “German Studies,” Lesson 7.

¹² Seines Gesichtsvorworts.

the smallness of his nasal protuberance ¹² six bottles (of) champagne.—ANONYMOUS.

22. "THE SHIP AT ANCHOR."

A TAVERN.

„Das Schiff vor Anker.“ Eine Schenke. — ¹ Mache . . . das Gefühbe. ² Ungefähr ein Jahr nachher. ³ Took place, entspann sich. ⁴ Holla, Hans! Du hier von Amerika? ⁵ Ein Gläschen. ⁶ Bei der Kälte. ⁷ Ich kann nicht. ⁸ Pass the . . . an (Dat.) vorübergehen. ⁹ Einen Schluck. ¹⁰ Es geht nicht. ¹¹ Ich bin hier geschwollen. ¹² Wie du zu thun pflegtest, or, wie früher. ¹³ Mein Junge. ¹⁴ Die Geschwulst wird bald abnehmen.

A sailor who was in the habit of spending all his money at the public-house, one day made a vow ¹ to be temperate in future, and kept it. About a twelvemonth afterwards ², he met with an old friend, and the following conversation took place ³ between them:—

PETER. Hollo, Jack! here you are, back from America⁴.

JACK. Yes, Master Peter.

PETER. Won't you come in, and have a glass ⁵ (of something) this cold day ⁶?

JACK. No, Master Peter, no! I cannot (drink) ⁷.

PETER. What, Jack, can you pass ⁸ the door of the "Ship at Anchor" without taking a cup ⁹ with your friends?

JACK. Impossible,¹⁰ Master Peter. I have a swelling here ¹¹; don't you see it?

PETER. Ah! that is because you don't drink your grog as you used to do ¹². Drink, my boy,¹³ and the swelling will soon go down ¹⁴.

¹⁵ Da habt ihr Recht. ¹⁶ Die ich mir geholt. ¹⁷ Dadurch, daß ich an dem „Schiff vor Anker“ vorübersteuerte. ¹⁸ To drink—or, das Trinken—in the latter case put the verb last. ¹⁹ Zusammengespart. ²⁰ I mean to go on doing it, ich bin fest entschlossen, so fortzufahren. ²¹ Zeigen zu können.

JACK. You are quite right there ¹⁵! [HE PULLS OUT OF HIS POCKET A LARGE LEATHERN PURSE FULL (OF) MONEY.] There's the swelling which I have given myself ¹⁶ by steering * clear of ¹⁷ the “Ship at Anchor.” If I begin drinking ¹⁸ again, it will soon go down; there is not the least doubt of that.

PETER. Is it possible that you have saved ¹⁹ so much money, Jack?

JACK. It is, indeed, and I mean to go on doing it ²⁰; and when I pass the “Ship at Anchor” after my next voyage, I hope to show ²¹ you a new swelling on the other side.—ANONYMOUS.

23. THE GLOW-WORM.

Der Leuchtwurm.—¹ What, &c. Was für ein grüner leuchtender Punkt ist das? ² Auch einer und dort noch einer. ³ Sie bewegen sich. ⁴ Es sieht aus wie laufendes Feuer. ⁵ Die Dinger. ⁶ Davon. ⁷ Die. ⁸ Es brennt dich nicht.

What is that spot of green light ¹ under the hedge? See, there is another, and another ²! Ah, they move ³! How fast they run about! Is it fire? it is like wild-fire ⁴; they ⁵ are like little stars upon the ground.

Take one of them ⁶ in your ⁷ hand; it will not burn you ⁸.

* Corresponding conjunction with the Impf. Indic.

⁹ Ich habe Feuer in der Hand. ¹⁰ Kaum, or, fast gar nicht mehr. ¹¹ Man nennt. ¹² Giebt (gibt) es. ¹³ Weit. ¹⁴ You may see to read, &c., hat man zwei oder drei davon beisammen, so kann man bei ihrem Lichte lesen. ¹⁵ Sie heißen.

How it moves about in my hand! my hand has fire in it ⁹. * What is it?

Bring it into the house; bring it to the candle.

Ah, it is a little worm; it hardly shines at all ¹⁰ now.

It is called ¹¹ a glow-worm.

In some countries there are ¹² insects which fly about in the summer evenings, and give a great deal ¹³ more light than the glow-worm; you may see to read by two or three of them together ¹⁴. They are called ¹⁵ fire-flies.
—MRS BARBAULD.

24. HISTORY OF COTTON.

Die Geschichte der Baumwolle.—¹ Baumwollstoffe, fab. made of cotton. ² Dates very far back, ist sehr alten Ursprunges. ³ Zu Herodot's Zeiten.

(I.) The word COTTON †, which is adopted in all the modern languages of Europe, is derived from an Arab word. The use of fabrics made from cotton ¹ dates very far back ². In the time of Herodotus ³ all (the) Indians

*. In phrases like the above the Germans employ the *definite article* instead of the possessive adjective. Thus, also, when in English a father says to his child, "Go to your mother," it must be rendered in German by Geh' zur (zu der) Mutter. Zu „*deiner Mutter*" would imply that the speaker was not the child's father.

† Cotton. In German the word „Baumwolle" is in use both for the raw and the worked material. „Kattun," however, is also used for cotton-cloth.

⁴ Vor Christus. ⁵ There were, gab es. ⁶ Kattunwebereien, manufactories of cotton tissues. ⁷ In Egypten und Arabien. ⁸ Not . . . great use, keinen großen Gebrauch. ⁹ Did not commence until after, fingen erst nach . . . an . . . zu pflanzen. ⁹ In der Krim und in Süd-Russland. ¹⁰ Seit (Dat.) ¹¹ Eingeführt. ¹² Uebertraf der Kattun von, &c. ¹³ Den aus dem Orient. ¹⁴ Die Kattunfabriken. ¹⁵ Date, &c., sind zu Anfang des vierzehnten Jahrhunderts entstanden. ¹⁶ Die ersten derartigen Anstalten waren zu Mailand und Venedig. ¹⁷ Man nimmt an. ¹⁸ Baumwollenwaaren. ¹⁹ Of some being, erwähnt einige zu Bolton . .

wore* cotton garments. In the first century before Christ⁴ there were⁵ manufactories of cotton tissues⁶ in Egypt and Arabia⁷, but the Greeks and the Romans do not appear to have made great use of them. The Chinese did not commence cultivating (the) cotton-(plant) until after⁸ the conquest of the Tartars in the thirteenth century; and at that same period cotton tissues formed an important article of commerce in the Crimea and Southern Russia⁹, whither they were brought from Turkestan. From¹⁰ the tenth century, the Arabs had naturalised¹¹ the cotton-plant in Spain; and in the fourteenth, the cotton-cloths of Grenada surpassed¹² in reputation those of the East¹³.

(II.) The manufactories of cotton goods¹⁴ in Italy date as far back as the commencement of the fourteenth century¹⁵, the first establishments being at Milan and Venice¹⁶. It is presumed¹⁷ † that there were at that period manufactories for cotton goods¹⁸ in England, as Deland, who lived in the time of Henry VIII., speaks of some being¹⁹

* Inversion. When an *adverbial* expression of any kind begins the sentence, the Germans put the *verb* before the *subject*; hence, trugen alle, etc. See "German Studies," Lesson 7.

† In German, as in French, the passive voice is frequently circumscribed by *man*, with the 3d pers. sing.

²⁰ Ein Parlamentsbeschluss.

at Bolton-on-the-Moor, and an Act of Parliament²⁰ of 1552, under Edward VI., mentions the cotton tissues of Manchester, Lancashire, and Cheshire.—ANONYMOUS.

25. GRATITUDE.

Dankbarkeit.—¹Translate: when the famous Oriental philosopher as slave received from, &c. ² Als er sie sogleich ganz auf. ³ For you, Dat., dir. ⁴ Gofch' eine. ⁵ Put in wenn. ⁶ Der Herr fühlte sich durch diese Antwort des Sklaven so betroffen. ⁷ Article.

The famous Eastern philosopher, Lokman, while a slave, being presented¹ by his master with a bitter melon, immediately ate it all².

“How was it possible,” said his master, “for you³ to eat so nauseous⁴ a fruit?”

Lokman replied: “I have received so many favours from you, that it is no wonder⁵ I (should) once in my life eat a bitter melon from your hand.” (verb last.)

This answer of the slave struck the master to such a degree⁶ that he immediately gave him his⁷ liberty. With such sentiments should man receive his portion (of) sufferings at the hand of God.—BISHOP HORNE.

26. BERLIN.*

Berlin.—¹Die erste Stadt. ²Des deutschen Reiches. ³Is situated, liegt.

(I.) Berlin, the capital of Prussia, and the metropolis¹ of the German empire², is situated³ on the small river

* See HAVET and SCHRUMPF'S “German Studies,” Lesson 46, „Die Stadt“ (Berlin).

⁴ In the midst of, mitten in einer. ⁵ Some of its parts rival, in einzelnen Theilen wetteifert sie . . . mit—⁶ Die Hauptstraße. ⁷ Durchgänge. ⁸ Befest. ⁹ Auf beiden Seiten. ¹⁰ Museum, Plur., Museen. ¹¹ Werden wegen . . . sehr gepriesen. ¹² Of many persons, &c., vieler in verschiedenen Zweigen der Wissenschaft ausgezeichneten Männer, und einer großen Anzahl von Leuten, die sich berufsmäßig mit der Literatur beschäftigen. ¹³ Im Jahre. ¹⁴ Belief sie sich. ¹⁵ Auf. ¹⁶ It will have run up, wird sie . . . erreicht haben. ¹⁷ Die regelmäßig in Berlin stehende Militärmacht. ¹⁸ Comprise, umfaßt. ¹⁹ Aller Waffengattungen.

Spree, in the midst of ⁴ a flat and sandy plain. Berlin is a handsome city, and some portions of it rival ⁵ in architectural magnificence any of the European capitals. The principal street ⁶, "Unter den Linden," is divided into five* avenues⁷ by rows of lime, chestnut, and other trees, and is lined⁸ on either side⁹ by splendid palaces and public buildings. The royal library contains more than 600,000 volumes and 14,000 manuscripts. The museums¹⁰ of Berlin are much celebrated¹¹ for their splendid antiquarian collections. Berlin forms at the same time the literary capital of Germany, and is the residence of many persons of eminence in various branches of science¹², and of a great number of individuals professionally devoted to the pursuit of literature. The University of Berlin is† frequented by 2000 students.

(II.) In ¹³ 1700 the population of Berlin was not more than 28,500; in 1740, when Frederic II. became king of Prussia, it was 98,000; in 1786, when Frederic died, it amounted ¹⁴ to ¹⁵ 148,000; now it will soon have run up¹⁶ to a million. The standing military forces garrisoned in Berlin ¹⁷ comprise ¹⁸ about 25,000 men of all arms¹⁹.

* There being a double row of trees, there are five avenues, the side-ways included.

† wird, Pres. Pass.

²⁰ Kunstzeugnisse, Manufakturen. ²¹ Umfassen. ²² Worunter. ²³ Waaren. ²⁴ Artikel aus, &c. ²⁵ Of both useful, &c., nützlich sowohl, wie zur Zierde dienender Gegenstände. ²⁶ Handwerker. ²⁷ Werden . . . gelobt. ²⁸ Eisenbahnen. ²⁹ Und mit den Großstädten.

(III.) The manufactures²⁰ of Berlin include²¹ a great variety of articles, of which²² woollen, silk, and cotton goods²³, with porcelain and cast-iron works²⁴, are the most important. For the last especially, which comprise a great variety of both useful and ornamental articles²⁵, the artisans²⁶ of this city are particularly celebrated²⁷. Numerous railway lines²⁸ connect Berlin with the different provinces of the kingdom, and the great capitals²⁹ of the Continent.—ANONYMOUS.

27. THE YOUNG PHILOSOPHER.

Der kleine Philosoph.—¹To ride by one's self, allein ausreiten, ²When, dismounting, als, während er abstieg . . . ³Sich lösrifs. ⁴He followed, er lief ihm nach. ⁵But on his approach, aber sobald er sich näherte. ⁶Take the finite verb. ⁷Was vorging, put in und, &c. . . . ⁸Made a turn, sich bog. ⁹Stellte sich dem Pferde in den Weg. ¹⁰&c.

I.

Mr Lovel was one morning riding by himself¹ when, dismounting² to gather a plant in the hedge, his horse got loose³, and galloped away (before him). He followed⁴, calling the horse by name, which stopped, but on his approach⁵ set off again. At length a little boy in a neighbouring field, seeing⁶ the affair⁷, ran across where the road made a turn⁸, and getting before the horse⁹, took him¹⁰ by the bridle, and held him till his owner came up. Mr L. looked at the boy, and admired his ruddy, cheerful countenance.

¹¹ Junge. ¹² Thou hast my horse very cleverly (geschickt) caught.
¹³ The hand. ¹⁴ Wirklich? ¹⁵ Um so. ¹⁶ Daß. ¹⁷ Sage mir. ¹⁸ Die
 die Futterrüben fressen. ¹⁹ Bei dem. ²⁰ Möchtest du nicht lieber spielen?
²¹ No hard work. ²² Who sent you. ²³ Der Vater. ²⁴ To live in the
 sense of to reside: wohnen. ²⁵ Da drüben zwischen den Bäumen. ²⁶ Wie
 heißt er? ²⁷ Auf Michaelis: say, at Michaelmas shall I become eight,
 ich werde.

"Thank you, my good lad ¹¹," said he; "you have caught my horse very cleverly ¹². What shall I give you for your trouble?" putting his ¹³ hand into his pocket.

"I want nothing, sir," said the boy.

Mr L. Don't you ¹⁴? so much the ¹⁵ better for you. Few men can say as much ¹⁶. But, pray ¹⁷, what were you doing in the field?

Boy. I was rooting up weeds, and tending the sheep that are feeding on the turnips ¹⁸.

Mr L. And do you like this employment?

B. Yes, very well, this ¹⁹ fine weather.

Mr L. But had you not rather play ²⁰?

B. This is not ²¹ hard work; it is almost as good as play.

Mr L. Who set you ²² to work?

B. My daddy ²³, sir.

Mr L. Where does he live ²⁴?

B. Just by, among the trees there ²⁵.

Mr L. What is his name ²⁶?

B. Thomas Hurdle.

Mr L. And what is yours?

B. Peter, sir.

Mr L. How old are you?

B. I shall be eight at Michaelmas ²⁷.

²⁸ To the dinner. ²⁹ Was ist das ?

Mr L. How long have you been (already) out in this field * ?

B. (Ever) since six in the morning.

Mr L. And are you not hungry ?

B. Yes ; I shall go to my dinner ²⁸ soon.

Mr L. If you had sixpence now, what would you do with it ?

B. I don't know ; I never had so much in my life.

Mr L. Have you no playthings ?

B. Playthings ! what are those ²⁹ ?

II.

¹ Nun zum Beispiel. ² Kreisel—French *toupie*. ³ Spielen. ⁴ Nothing else, sonst nichts. ⁵ Für das, was ich habe. ⁶ To bring up, heimbringen.

Mr L. Such as ¹ balls, ninepins, marbles, tops², and wooden horses.

B. No, sir ; but our Tom makes footballs to kick ³ in the cold weather, and we set traps for birds ; and then I have a pair of stilts to walk through the dirt with ; and I had a hoop, but it is broken.

Mr L. And do you want nothing else ⁴ ?

B. No ; I have hardly time for those ⁵ ; for I always ride the horses to field, and bring up ⁶ the cows, and run

* The Germans use the *present tense* in connection with the word *schon* or *seit* for the English *perfect* or *compound tense* when the latter expresses that the action or condition still continues, especially in the question *How long?* and the answer to it: *How long have you been in England?*—Wie lange sind Sie schon in England? I have been here three years,—Ich bin seit drei Jahren hier. See No. 12.

⁷ *Mache Gänge nach der Stadt.* ⁸ Translate—And the gingerbread, I like not much, esse ich nicht sehr gern. ⁹ A pie now and then, hier und da einen Kuchen. ¹⁰ Ebenso. ¹¹ Hättest du nicht gern. ¹² Es liegt mir nichts daran. ¹³ Ganz. ¹⁴ I had as lief have none at all, ich hätte lieber gar keinen. ¹⁵ Er drückt mich.

to the town for errands⁷; and that is as good as play, you know.

Mr L. Well, but you could buy apples or gingerbread at the town, I suppose, if you had money?

B. Oh! I can get apples at home; and as for gingerbread, I don't mind it much⁸, for my mother gives me a pie now and then⁹, and that is as¹⁰ good.

Mr L. Would you not like¹¹ a knife to cut sticks?

B. I have one—here it is; brother Tom gave it me (Dat.)*.

Mr L. Your shoes are full of holes—don't you want a better pair?

B. I have a better pair for (art.) Sundays.

Mr L. But these let in water.

B. Oh, I don't care for that¹².

Mr L. Your hat is all¹³ torn, too.

B. I have a better at home; but I had as lief have none at all¹⁴, for it hurts my head¹⁵.

Mr L. What do you do when it rains?

B. If it rains very hard, I get under the hedge till it is over.

Mr L. What do you do when you are hungry before it is time to go home?

B. I sometimes eat a raw turnip.

* Compare HAVET and SCHRUMPF'S "First German Book," 50th lesson, p. 92.

¹⁸ Denke nicht daran. ¹⁷ Little fellow, Junge. ¹⁸ Quite a, ein ganzer.
¹⁹ Wie meinen Sie das? ²⁰ Geißt. ²¹ Nichts Böses hoffentlich. ²² You seem
 to want nothing at all, du scheinst gar keine Bedürfnisse zu haben. ²³ Dir
 Bedürfnisse zu machen. ²⁴ Brauchen. ²⁵ Ein ABC-Buch. ²⁶ Anschaffen.
²⁷ To think one a, einen für etwas halten. ²⁸ I will, Ja. ²⁹ Good-
 bye, Adieu! (pronounced as in French.)

Mr L. But if there are none?

B. Then I do as well as I can: I work on, and never think of it¹⁶.

Mr L. Are you not dry sometimes this hot weather?

B. Yes; but there is water enough.

Mr L. Why, my little fellow¹⁷, you are quite a¹⁸ philosopher!

B. Sir¹⁹?

Mr L. I say you are a philosopher, but I am sure you do not know what that means²⁰.

B. No, sir—no harm, I hope²¹?

Mr L. No, no! (laughing). Well, my boy, you seem to want nothing at all²², so I shall not give you money to make you want anything²³. But were you ever at school?

B. No, sir; but daddy says I shall go after harvest.

Mr L. You will want²⁴ books, then?

B. Yes; the boys have all a spelling-book²⁵ and a New Testament.

Mr L. Well, then, I will give²⁶ you them. Tell your daddy so, and that it is because I thought you²⁷ a very good little boy. So now go to your sheep again.

B. I will²⁸, sir. Thank you.

Mr L. Good-bye²⁹, Peter.

B. Good-bye, sir.

J. AIKIN.

28. THE SUN.*

Die Sonne.—¹ Ich gehe . . . auf. ² In at your window, zu deinem Fenster hinein. ³ Aufzustehen. ⁴ Damit du, Subj. . . . ⁵ Sondern. ⁶ Eine tüchtige Reisende. ⁷ I travel all over, ich umwandle, Acc. ⁸ And I send forth, &c., ich sende meine Strahlen überall hin, nach allen Richtungen. ⁹ Ich bescheine. ¹⁰ Second person singular or plural. ¹¹ Obst, (das). ¹² Das Getreide. ¹³ I am up, &c., ich bin sehr hoch oben am Himmel. ¹⁴ If I were to come, wenn ich . . . käme. ¹⁵ Dir or euch. ¹⁶ Der . . . ¹⁷ Umhülle mir das Haupt. ¹⁸ Mich ansehen. ¹⁹ Supply "in the sky," am Himmel.

(I.) I rise¹ in the east; and when I rise, then it is day. I look in at your window² with my bright golden eye, and tell you when it is time to get up³; I do not shine for you to⁴ lie in your bed and sleep, but⁵ I shine for you to get up and work, and read, and walk about. I am a great traveller⁶; I travel all over⁷ the sky; I never stop, and I never am tired. I have upon my head a crown of bright beams, and I send forth my rays everywhere⁸. I shine upon⁹ the trees and the houses, and upon the water; and everything looks sparkling and beautiful when I shine upon it. I give you¹⁰ light, and I give you heat. I make the fruit¹¹ ripen, and the corn¹² ripen. I am up very high in the sky¹³, higher than all trees, higher than the clouds. If I were to come¹⁴ nearer you¹⁵, I should scorch you to death, and I should burn up¹⁶ the grass.

(II.) Sometimes I take off my crown of bright rays, and wrap up my head † in¹⁷ thin silver clouds; and then you may look at me¹⁸. But when there are no clouds¹⁹, and I shine with all my brightness at noonday, you

* See HAVET and SCHRUMPF'S "German Studies," Lesson 69, „Von der Astronomie.“

† Haupt is used figuratively, and in solemn or reverential language; Kopf is the common expression. See "German Studies," page 59, note 1.

¹⁸ Blenden. ¹⁹ Going to, bald; or, wenn ich im Begriffe bin, aufzugehen.
²⁰ Fliegt die Lerche in die Höhe mir entgegen. ²¹ Lieblich. ²² Die Fledermaus.
²³ In ihre Gruben und Höhlen. ²⁴ In all places, überall. ²⁵ Auf der ganzen Erde. ²⁶ Daß man . . . sehen kann.

cannot look at me; for I should dazzle ¹⁸ your eyes, and make you blind. Only the eagle* can look at me then: the eagle with his strong piercing eye can gaze upon me always. And when I am going ¹⁹ to rise in the morning, and make (it) day, the lark flies up in the sky to meet me ²⁰, and sings sweetly ²¹ in the air, and the cock crows loud to tell everybody that I am coming; but the owl and the bat ²² fly away when they see me, and hide themselves in old walls and hollow trees; and the lion and the tiger go into their dens and caves ²³, where they sleep all the day. I shine in all places ²⁴: I shine in England, and in France, and in Spain, and all over the earth ²⁵. I am the most beautiful and glorious creature that can be seen in the whole world ²⁶.—MRS BARBAULD.

29. HAMBURG.

Hamburg.—¹ Der Haupthafen. ² Ufer. ³ Oberhalb. ⁴ Its mouth, ihrer Mündung, Gen. ⁵ Die schwersten Seeschiffe. ⁶ An die Stadt heran.

(I.) Hamburg, the great seaport¹ of Germany, and one of the most important commercial cities in the world, is situated on the right or north bank² of the Elbe, 15 German miles above³ its month⁴. The river being deep, vessels of the largest size⁵ come quite up to the town⁶. (Art.) Great part of Hamburg was consumed by a

* Der Adler—plur. die Adler; or, der Aar, die Aare.

⁷ Erstanden. ⁸ Denn. ⁹ Bei dem Wiederaufbau. ¹⁰ Verbientermaßen.
¹¹ Zu . . . zählt. ¹² Der Handel. ¹³ Umfaßt alle Artikel des deutschen Ein-
 und Ausfuhrhandels. ¹⁴ Ansehnliche Elbestrom (m.) ¹⁵ Wasserstraße. ¹⁶ Auf.
¹⁷ Waaren. ¹⁸ Beläuft sich auf. ¹⁹ Principal branches, Hauptzweige.
²⁰ Von Karl dem Großen. ²¹ Stiftete. ²² Den . . . Hansebund, or, die
 . . . Hanse. ²³ Beitritten. ²⁴ Mit einem . . . benachbarten Gebiete.

terrible conflagration in 1842. A new and handsome city has risen⁷ out of the ashes of (art.) old Hamburg; for⁸ in rebuilding⁹ the parts then destroyed, great improvements were made in the arrangement of the streets and general character of the houses, so that Hamburg now deservedly¹⁰ ranks among¹¹ the finest cities in Europe.

(II.) The trade¹² of Hamburg*, which is immense, embraces every article of German commerce, both in the way of import and export¹³, and the noble¹⁴ river Elbe is the great channel¹⁵ by¹⁶ which these various commodities¹⁷ are conveyed. The value of the import only amounts to¹⁸ about 400,000,000 of dollars annually. Hamburg has also considerable manufactures. The principal branches¹⁹ in this respect are sugar-refining, brewing, and distilling; the manufacture of tobacco, cigars, and snuff; hat-making and dyeing.

(III.) The city was founded by Charlemagne²⁰ in 803, and in the 13th century, together with Lubeck, established²¹ the historically famous Hanseatic League²², which a great many other towns acceded to²³. Hamburg, with a small adjacent²⁴ territory, forms still a free city and independent state of the German Empire. Its inhabitants

* Hamburgs or von Hamburg. When names of towns or countries end in s, z or x, no termination can be added. Hence we can only say: die Straßen von Paris.

²⁴ Unternehmungsg Geist. ²⁵ Vaterlandsliebe.

are distinguished by their energy, enterprise²⁴, intelligence, and patriotism²⁵.

30. CHARLEMAGNE AS A LEGISLATOR.*

Karl der Große als Gesetzgeber. — ¹ Thaten. ² Fürst. ³ Des Frankenreiches. ⁴ Den Beinamen „der Große.“ ⁵ Both—and, sowohl—als auch. ⁶ Dat. ⁷ Pipin dem Kurzen. ⁸ Rom. ⁹ Am Weihnachtsfeste. ¹⁰ Aachen. ¹¹ Seines weiten . . . ¹² Belgien. ¹³ Zerstückelt. ¹⁴ Singular. ¹⁵ Seine einzigen Ansprüche auf . . . ¹⁶ That which, was. ¹⁷ Whereby he substituted . . . wodurch er Ordnung anstatt der Gesetzlosigkeit (Anarchie) einführte. ¹⁸ Stämme. ¹⁹ Des. ²⁰ Abbot, Abt, Aebte.

(Charles I., surnamed Charlemagne on account of his great actions¹, was 'the most illustrious prince'² of the Frankish monarchy³. He deserved the name of Great⁴ both⁵ as a statesman and a conqueror. He succeeded his father⁶, Pepin the Short⁷, in 768, was proclaimed Emperor of the West in Rome⁸ on Christmas-day⁹, in the year 800, and died in 814 at Aix-la-Chapelle¹⁰, the capital of his vast¹¹ empire. That empire included France, Belgium¹², Germany, Upper Italy, and (art.) part of Spain. That mighty monarchy was dismembered¹³ during the reigns¹⁴ of the feeble successors of Charlemagne).

The exploits and conquests of this great monarch are by no means his only titles to¹⁵ admiration and respect. That which¹⁶ raises him above all the sovereigns of his age is the wisdom of his legislation, whereby he substituted order for anarchy¹⁷, and bound together as one people a multitude of races¹⁸ differing in origin, language, manners, customs, and religion.

Twice a¹⁹ year he convoked a kind of parliament or national assembly, consisting of bishops, abbots²⁰, and lay

* See HAVET and SCHRUMPF'S "German Studies," page 62, „Karl der Große.“

²¹ Lay representatives, aus Vertretern aus dem Laienstande. ²² Capitularien. ²³ In order to, &c., Achtung zu verschaffen. ²⁴ District, Gau—plur. Gaue. ²⁵ Sendboten. ²⁶ Sollten. ²⁷ So groß. ²⁸ Eifer.

representatives ²¹, to remedy abuses, and deliberate upon his laws, called CAPITULARIES ²² *.

In order to make his laws respected ²³, he divided his whole empire into districts ²⁴, confiding the authority of each district † to three or four magistrates and envoys ²⁵, who were expected ²⁶ to report to him everything of moment. And such ²⁷ was his diligence ²⁸, that he made it his business to become acquainted with every political movement of his whole empire.—DR C. BREWER'S *History of France*.

31. MAN PROPOSES, GOD DISPOSES.

Der Mensch denkt, Gott lenkt.—¹ Ich besitze, habe ein Vermögen von.

“I am now worth ¹ one hundred thousand pounds,” said old Gregory, as he ascended a hill, part of an estate he had just purchased.

“I am now worth one hundred thousand pounds, and I am but sixty-five years of age, (I am) hale and robust in

* *Capitularies*, from the Latin *capitulum*, a chapter; German, Kapitäl. The laws of the Frankish kings are so called because they were divided into *chapters* or sections.

† *District*, Gau—plur. Gaue. The expression is still extensively to be met with in Southern Germany, as, Breisgau (in Baden); Basgau (Vosges). Those *magistrates* were called Grafen (old Germ. Graven, *i.e.*, grey-haired men, elders). The modern word Graf for *count* is of the same origin. The *envoys* had the official title of Sendboten, or, Latin being then much in use, *Missi regii* or *dominici*.—A. L. BECKER.

² I am hale, &c., ich bin frisch und gesund (or bin von gesunder und kräftiger Leibesbeschaffenheit). ³ Und mir wohl sein lassen. ⁴ Bot. ⁵ Auf. ⁶ Eine Tannenpflanzung. ⁷ Come down, abgerissen werden. ⁸ Aus. ⁹ Das ist ihre Sache. ¹⁰ Darf. ¹¹ So returned old Gregory. ¹² Aufständig zu Nacht. ¹³ Versiel. ¹⁴ Wo sie waren. ¹⁵ Am Bache. ¹⁶ Freuen sich über.

my constitution²; so I'll eat and I'll drink, and live merrily³ all the days of my life."

"I am now worth one hundred thousand pounds," said old Gregory, as he attained the summit of a hill which commanded⁴ a full prospect of⁵ his estate; "and here," said he, "I'll plant an orchard; and on that spot I'll have a pinery⁶."

"Yon farmhouses shall come down⁷," said (art.) old Gregory; "they interrupt my view."

"Then what will become of⁸ the farmers?" asked the steward who attended him.

"That is their business⁹," answered old Gregory.

"And that mill must¹⁰ not stand on the stream," said old Gregory.

"Then how will the villagers grind their corn?" asked the steward.

"That's not my business," answered old Gregory.

So old Gregory¹¹ returned* home—ate a hearty supper¹²—drank a bottle of port (wine)—smoked two pipes of tobacco—and fell¹³ into a profound slumber, from which he never more awoke. The farmers reside on their lands¹⁴—the mill stands upon the stream¹⁵—and the villagers all rejoice in¹⁶ his death.—ANONYMOUS.

* Whenever an adverbial expression of any kind begins the sentence, the verb must precede the subject.—See "German Studies," Lesson 7.

32. GASCONADES.

Gasconnaden (Großsprecherien).—¹ Gascogne. ² Have long been celebrated, sind längst bekannt. ³ Durch ihre wüthigen Prahlereien. ⁴ Gasconier. ⁵ Zum (verh first). ⁶ Stäbe. ⁷ Adject. in isch. ⁸ Heldenthaten. ⁹ Mann. ¹⁰ With nothing else but . . . ausschließlich mit ¹¹ Den Schnurrbärten.

(I.) The inhabitants of the province of Gascony¹ have long been celebrated² for their lively sallies³, called in French GASCONADES. A Gascon⁴, in⁵ proof of his nobility, asserted that in his father's castle they used no other firewood but the batons⁶ of the different marshals of France of his family.

(II.) A Gascon⁷ officer, hearing some one celebrating the exploits⁸ of a prince who, in two assaults upon a town, had killed six men^{9*} with (his) own hand: "Bah!" said he, "the very mattress I sleep upon is stuffed with nothing else but¹⁰ the moustaches¹¹ of those whom I sent† to slumber in the other world."—*Good Things for Railway Readers.*

33. POPE SIXTUS THE FIFTH.

Papst Sixtus der Fünfte.—¹ Ein Binger.

(I.) His father, whose name was Peretti, was a vine-dresser¹. Not being able to bring up his son, he placed

* Men—Mann. When speaking of soldiers, Mann remains unchanged in the plural. The same rule applies to other *masculine* or *neuter* nouns indicating *measure*, *weight*, and *number*, as, Soll, Pfund, Grab, Fuß, Dußenb. See "German Studies," page 68.

† As in French "envoyer," thus in German, „schicken“ takes no preposition before the infinitive dependent on it.

² To place with, unterbringen bei. ³ To employ in, zu etwas verwenden. ⁴ Schweinehüten. ⁵ Ein Franziskanermönch. ⁶ Zum. ⁷ Gegenb, f. ⁸ (And) pleased with . . . fand an seiner lebhaften Rede Gefallen, und . . . ⁹ Freude am Lernen. ¹⁰ To acquire, sich erwerben. ¹¹ To bend, sich beugen. ¹² Last. ¹³ Wenn er einherging, ließ er den Kopf . . . hängen. ¹⁴ To lean, sich stützen. ¹⁵ Wie wenn er am . . . wäre. ¹⁶ Die Parteien. ¹⁷ Den Kirchenstaat. ¹⁸ Only by, nur dem . . . nach. ¹⁹ Die Tiara oder dreifache Krone. ²⁰ Mit so starker Stimme. ²¹ Das Gemölde. ²² Von.

him with ² a farmer, who employed him in ³ keeping his swine ⁴. A Franciscan friar ⁵, having met with him, took him for ⁶ his guide in an unfrequented place ⁷, and, pleased with the vivacity of his conversation ⁸, induced him to accompany him to his convent, where the young swineherd was admitted. He soon manifested a love for learning ⁹, and afterwards acquired ¹⁰ great reputation by his sermons. When raised to the cardinalship, he took the name of Montalto, and retired from public affairs, appearing entirely devoted to study.

(II.) From that time Montalto gradually assumed the appearance of a man bending ¹¹ under the weight ¹² of years. He walked with his head resting ¹³ on one shoulder, leaning ¹⁴ on a staff, and incessantly coughed, as if about to ¹⁵ expire. The parties ¹⁶ that divided the Roman States ¹⁷ thought him the fittest of all men to be Pope, his easy temper giving them hopes (*sing.*) that he would be Pope only by ¹⁸ name, and that all the authority would devolve upon them (*selves*). He was therefore elected in 1585.

As soon as the tiara ¹⁹ was placed upon his head, he threw away his staff, walked erect, and chanted (*art.*) Te Deum with a voice so strong ²⁰ that the roof ²¹ of the chapel re-echoed with ²² the sound.

²³ Inbem. ²⁴ Gefchloffenheit.

He governed with extreme* severity, but was, however, the benefactor of his states, by ²³ purifying them from the licence ²⁴ and disorder which prevailed (*pl. p.*) before him.—*AIKIN'S Biographical Dictionary.*

34. THE FORCE OF LABOUR.

Eiferer Fleiß.—¹ The mere drudgery, die wahre Plädersci. ² Active phrase, Der sich . . . unterzogen. ³ Den Preis. ⁴ As much as, &c., Drei ganze Foliohände. ⁵ Während. ⁶ Nom. ⁷ Pflegte er. ⁸ To recreate one's self with, sich an etwas erholen. ⁹ Gebleicht.

The mere drudgery ¹ undergone ² by some men in carrying on their undertakings has been something extraordinary; but the drudgery they regarded as the price ³ of success. Addison amassed as much as three folios ⁴ of manuscript materials before he began his "Spectator." Newton wrote his "Chronology" fifteen times over before he was satisfied with it, and Gibbon wrote out his "Memoir" nine times. Hale studied for ⁵ many years at the rate of sixteen hours a day, and when wearied with ⁶ the study of the law, he would ⁷ recreate himself with ⁸ the study of mathematics (*sing.*) Hume wrote thirteen hours a day while preparing his "History of England." Montesquieu, speaking of one part of his writings, said to a friend, "You will read it in a few hours; but I assure you that it (has) cost me so much labour that it has whitened ⁹ my hair."—*SMILES'S Self-Help.*

* To denote *firmness* of purpose, *perseverance*, or *severity*, the Germans are fond of the word *eisern*; thus, *eiserne Festigkeit*, *eiserner Fleiß*, *eiserne Strenge*.

35. LADY MONTAGUE TO THE COUNTESS OF MAR.

Lady Montague an die Gräfin von Mar.—¹Ein Haus. ²Illustrious by having, &c. . . . daß durch den Umstand berühmt ist, daß seine jüngere Linie auf dem Throne England's sitzt, und daßes . . . gegeben hat. ³Einen vollständigen Bericht. ⁴Hannover.

BRUNSWICK (Braunschweig), Nov. 23, 1716.

I am just come to Brunswick, a very old town, but which has the advantage of being the capital of the Duke of Wolfenbittel's dominions; a family¹ illustrious by having² its younger branch on the throne of England, and having given two empresses to Germany. I have not forgotten to drink your health in "mum," which very well deserves its reputation of being the best (beer) in the world. This letter is the third (which) I have written (*pres.*) to you during my journey; and I declare to you that if you don't send me immediately a full account³ of all the changes amongst our London* acquaintances, I will not write to you any description of Hanover⁴, where I hope to be to-night; though I know (that) you have more curiosity to hear of that place than any other.

MARY WORTLEY MONTAGUE.

36. THE CALAMITIES OF GENIUS.

Trauriges Loos großer Geister.—¹Eine Handmühle.

(I.) Homer was a beggar; Plautus turned a mill¹; Terence was a slave; Boethius died in gaol; Paul

* Thus, the London merchants, die Londoner Kaufleute; the Paris fashion, die Pariser Mode. In similar cases the Germans generally use the adjective. However, there are exceptions like the following: *Heidelberg University*, die Universität Heidelberg; *Offenburg Station*, die Station Offenburg, &c. See "German Studies," page 68.

² Trieb. ³ Gewerbe. ⁴ Und doch verhungerte er dabei. ⁵ In der Klemme.
⁶ Wegen. ⁷ (Dem) Bentivoglio wurde die Aufnahme . . . verweigert.
⁸ Der Lusiaden. ⁹ Leichnam, m. ¹⁰ A life of meanness and distress,
 niedrig und ärmlich. ¹¹ Came through, &c., died in consequence of,
 in Folge von. ¹² Geisteskrankheit. ¹³ His copyright, sein Verlagsrecht.
¹⁴ Auf das „Verlorene Paradies.“ ¹⁵ Zu drei Zahlungsterminen. ¹⁶ In der
 Vergessenheit. ¹⁷ Zu früh. ¹⁸ Lebte in beständigem Kampfe. ¹⁹ Mit den
 Gerichtsdienern. ²⁰ Der Landgeistliche.

Borghese had² fourteen trades³, and yet starved with them all⁴; Tasso was often distressed⁵ for a few shillings⁶; Bentivoglio was refused * admittance⁷ into a hospital (which) he had himself erected; Cervantes died of hunger; Camoens, the celebrated writer of the “Lusiad⁸,” † ended his days in an almshouse; and Vaugelas left his body⁹ to the surgeons to pay his debts.

(II.) In our country, Bacon lived a life of meanness and distress¹⁰; Walter Raleigh died on the scaffold; Spenser, the charming Spenser, died forsaken and in want; and the death of Collins came through¹¹ neglect, first causing mental derangement¹²; Milton sold his copyright¹³ of “Paradise Lost¹⁴” for fifteen pounds, at three payments¹⁵, and finished his life in obscurity¹⁶; Dryden lived in poverty and distress; Otway died prematurely¹⁷, and through hunger; Lee died in the streets (*sing.*); Steele lived a life of perfect warfare¹⁸ with bailiffs¹⁹; Goldsmith's “Vicar²⁰ of Wakefield” was sold for a trifle to save him

* The verb „verfagen“ governing the dative case in German, the phrase must be turned thus: To Bentivoglio admission was refused. Thus, I was promised, man versprach mir, mir wurde versprochen. I was given to understand, man gab mir zu verstehen.

† Portug., “Os Lusiadas;” Lat., *Lusitani*: the Lusitani = Portuguese. An epic poem describing the achievements of Vasco da Gama and his companions.

²¹ To save him from the gripe, (um) ihn den Händen des Gesetzes zu entreißen. ²² Der englischen Kaufmannschaft in Lissabon. ²³ Confined, eingesperrt. ²⁴ Nahm sich selbst das Leben.

from the gripe ²¹ of the law; Fielding lies in the burying-ground of the English factory at Lisbon²², without a stone to mark the spot; Savage died in prison at Bristol, where he was confined ²³ for a debt of eight pounds; Butler lived in penury, and died poor; Chatterton, the child of genius and misfortune, destroyed himself ²⁴.—ANONYMOUS.

37. LETTER FROM LORD BYRON TO DR PIGOT.

Brief von Lord Byron an Doktor Pigot.—¹ In full, den zweiten August. ² Ich komme von London. ³ Familiengruft, f. ⁴ Vorgestern hörte ich, daß sie krank sei; gestern vernahm ich ihren Tod. ⁵ Gott sei Dank. ⁶ See footnote, p. 46; man sagt mir. ⁷ Keine Gefahr geahnt habe. ⁸ Für Ihre Aufmerksamkeit. ⁹ In Geschäftssachen. ¹⁰ So kann ich vielleicht meinen Besuch auf Chester ausdehnen.

NEWPORT PAGNELL, *August 2¹, 1811.*

MY DEAR DOCTOR,—My poor mother died yesterday! and I am on my way from town ² to attend her to the family vault ³. I heard one day of her illness, and the next of her death ⁴. Thank God ⁵, her last moments were tranquil. I am told (that) ⁶ she was in little pain, and not aware of her situation ⁷. I now feel the truth of Mr Gray's observation, "(That) we can only have one mother." Peace be with her!

I have to thank you for your expressions of regard ⁸; and as in six weeks I shall be in Lancashire on business ⁹, I may extend ¹⁰ to Chester,—at least I shall endeavour. I

¹¹ Where I shall be happy, wo es mich freuen wird.

shall remain at Newstead the greater part of this month, where I shall be happy ¹¹ to hear from you after my two years' absence in the East.—I am, dear Pigot, yours very truly,
 BYRON.

38. TOO MUCH FOR THE WHISTLE.

Su viel für eine Pfeife. — ¹An einen Feiertage. ²To a shop where toys were sold for children, translate simply: einem Spielwaarenladen zu. ³And being charmed with, und da mir . . . gefiel. ⁴Sah. ⁵Untermegß. ⁶Ohne Bedenken. ⁷Went . . . over . . . lief durch. ⁸To understand, hören von . . . ⁹Biermal mehr. ¹⁰To put one in mind what . . . einen erinnern an . . . ¹¹With vexation, vor Ärger. ¹²Das Nachdenken darüber. ¹³To give chagrin, ärgern. ¹⁴To give pleasure, freuen.

(I.) When I was a child about seven years of age, my friends, on a holiday¹, filled my pockets with halfpence. I went directly towards a shop where toys were sold for children²; and being charmed³ with the sound of a whistle, that I met⁴ by the way⁵, in the hands of another boy, I voluntarily⁶ offered him all my money for it. I then came home, and went whistling over⁷ the house, much pleased with my whistle, but disturbing all the family. My brothers, and sisters, and cousins, understanding⁸ the bargain (which) I had made, told me (that) I had given four times as much⁹ for it as it was worth.

(II.) This put me in mind what¹⁰ good things I might have bought with the rest of the money; and they laughed at me so much for my folly, that I cried with vexation¹¹. My reflections on the subject¹² gave me more chagrin¹³ than the whistle gave me pleasure¹⁴. This little event,

¹⁵ To be of use, nützlich sein. ¹⁶ The impression continuing on my mind, der Eindruck blieb mir. ¹⁷ To save money, Geld sparen.

however, was afterwards of use ¹⁵ to me, the impression continuing on my mind ¹⁶; so that often, when I was tempted to buy some unnecessary thing, I said to myself, "Do not give (*sing.*) too much for the whistle;" and so I saved my money ¹⁷.—FRANKLIN.*

39. THE DERVISE AND THE CAMEL.

Der Dervisch und das Kameel.—¹ Ihr. ² Das haben wir, allerdings. ³ Neuter. ⁴ Am. ⁵ So war es. ⁶ Zu demselben. ⁷ Aus eurem Munde. ⁸ His person, ihn. ⁹ To hurry one before, zum . . . schleppen.

(I.) A Dervise was journeying alone in a desert, when two merchants suddenly met him. "You ¹ have lost a camel," said he to the merchants.—"Indeed we have ²," they replied.—"Was he ³ not blind in his ⁴ right eye, and lame in his ⁴ left leg?" said the dervise.—"He was ⁵," replied the merchants.—"And was he not loaded with honey on one side, and wheat on the other?"—"Most certainly he was," they replied; "and, as you have seen him so lately, and marked him so particularly, you can in all probability conduct us to him ⁶."—"My friends," said the dervise, "I have never seen your camel, nor ever heard of him, but from you ⁷."—"A pretty story truly," said the merchants; "but where are the jewels that formed a part of his cargo?"—"I have seen neither your camel nor your jewels," repeated the dervise. On this, they seized his person ⁸, and forthwith hurried him ⁹ before the cadi,

* See HAVET and SCHRUMPF'S "German Studies," p. 143, „Gebüßt! Gebüßt!“

¹⁰ Trotz der strengsten Untersuchung. ¹¹ Noch konnte irgend welcher Beweisgrund beigebracht werden. ¹² To convict one, einen überführen (Gen. of crime). ¹³ Verfahren. ¹⁴ Zauberer. ¹⁵ The court, der Gerichtshof; die versammelten Richter. ¹⁶ Eure Verwunderung hat mir vielen Spass gemacht. ¹⁷ Ich gebe zu. ¹⁸ That there has been, daß vorhanden war. ¹⁹ Ample scope, ein weites Feld. ²⁰ To cross, begegnen (Dat.), at least here. ²¹ The track, die Spur. ²² To stray from, einem entlaufen. ²³, ²⁴ No mark of any human footstep, keine menschliche Fußspur. ²⁵ Abgeweidet. ²⁶ Gemacht. ²⁷ Ein Büschel, m. ²⁸ Had been left uninjured, war . . . stehen geblieben. ²⁹ Des Bisses. ³⁰ Was die Last des Thieres anbetrifft, so . . .

where, on the strictest search¹⁰, nothing could be found upon him, nor could any evidence whatever be adduced¹¹ to convict¹² him either of falsehood or of theft.

(II.) They were about to proceed¹³ against him as a sorcerer¹⁴, when the dervise with great calmness thus addressed the court¹⁵: "I have been much amused¹⁶ with your surprise, and own¹⁷ that there has been¹⁸ some ground for your suspicions (*sing.*); but I have lived long and alone, and I can find ample scope¹⁹ for observation even in a desert. I knew that I had crossed²⁰ the track²¹ of a camel that had strayed from²² its owner, because I saw no mark²³ of any human footstep²⁴ on the same route; I knew that the animal was blind of an eye, because it had cropped²⁵ the herbage only on one side of its path, and that it was lame in one leg, from the faint impression which that particular foot had produced²⁶ upon the sand; I concluded that the animal had lost one tooth, because, wherever it had grazed, a small tuft²⁷ of herbage had been left uninjured²⁸ in the centre of its bite²⁹. As to that which formed the burthen³⁰ of the beast, the busy ants informed me that it was corn on the one side,

³¹ The clustering flies, die Mäſſe Fliegen.

and the clustering flies ³¹, that it was honey on the other.”
—COLTON'S *Lacon*.

A few remarks on the use of the German Tenses.

1. *The Present Tense* is employed in the same cases as in English, with the exception of what has been mentioned in the foot-notes of Nos. 12 and 27.

2. *The German Imperfect* is the *narrative* tense. It stands for the English *Past Incomplete* and *Past* (Past Indefinite):

Ich ſchrieb, I was writing, and I wrote.

The preposition *als* is generally followed by the above tense:
Als ich ihm ſagte, when I told him.

3. *The Perfect Tense* (Present Complete, or *French* *Passé indéfini*, *Vergangenheit*, in German) expresses an action or event completely ended, without any reference to another event happening at the same time. It often corresponds with the *English Past Tense*:

Ich habe die telegraphiſche Depeſche richtig erhalten, I duly received the telegraphic despatch.

Sein Vater iſt geſtorben, his father died.

Wie lange ſind Sie in Köln geweſen? how long were you at Cologne?

Note: Wie lange ſind Sie (ſchon) in Köln? how long have you been at Cologne? See again Nos. 12 and 27.

You might also say, Wie lange waren Sie in Köln? for, how long were you at Cologne?

The German Perfect Tense is furthermore employed in short questions and answers as in *French*: Qu'avez-vous fait? was haben Sie geſhan? what did you do?

Je n'ai rien fait; Ich habe nichts geſhan; I did not do anything.

4. *The Pluperfect* and *Future Tenses* present no difficulty to the English student.

In subordinate sentences the auxiliary *hätte* or *war* is frequently dropped, especially in *poetry*:

Und eſ' ihm noch das Wort entfallen (war);

And before the word had escaped his lips.—*Schiller*.

40. THE CONJURER AND THE TAILOR.

Der Taschenspieler und der Schneider. — ¹ What, &c., creature am I! was für ein . . . Kerl bin ich. ² Wenn es den Leuten einfällt. ³ Auf das ich mich werfen kann. ⁴ Mit mir steht es nicht ganz so schlecht. ⁵ Andere . . . ⁶ Je. ⁷ In den Bettelstab — to be reduced to, kommen. ⁸ Helfen (Dat.) ⁹ Herrschte, translate: in the land. ¹⁰ Hatte zu leben. ¹¹ Niemand. ¹² Beim. ¹³ Selben.

A conjurer and a tailor once happened to converse (*imp.*) together: "Alas!" cries the tailor, "what an unhappy poor creature am I¹! If people take it into their heads to² live without clothes, I am undone; I have no other trade to have recourse to³!"

"Indeed, friend, I pity you sincerely," replies the conjurer; "but, thank heaven, things are not quite so bad with me⁴; for, if one trick should fail, I have a hundred tricks more⁵ for them yet. However, if at any time⁶ you are reduced to beggary⁷, apply* to me, and I will relieve⁸ you."

A famine overspread⁹ the land; the tailor made a shift to¹⁰ live, because his customers could not be without clothes; but the poor conjurer, with all his hundred tricks, could find none that had money to throw away: it was in vain that he promised to eat fire, or to vomit pins; no single creature¹¹ would relieve him, till he was at last obliged to beg from¹² the very¹³ tailor whose calling he had formerly despised.—GOLDSMITH.

* To apply to, sich wenden an (Acc.) Many German reflective verbs are expressed by English verbs which are not reflective.

41. TIT FOR TAT.

Wie du mir, so ich dir. — ¹Defan or Dechant *. ²A turbot, eine Steinbutte. ³Zum Geschenke. ⁴Who had frequently been on similar errands, der öfters mit ähnlichen Aufträgen verschickt worden war — or, also here; der öfters mit ähnlichen Aufträgen zu Swift gekommen war. ⁵Having gained admission, nachdem man ihm geöffnet hatte. ⁶Studyzimmer. ⁷Abruptly, ohne weiteres. ⁸Very rudely, sehr grob. ⁹Der Herr. ¹⁰Is that the way you deliver your message? richtet man so einen Auftrag aus? ¹¹Ich will. ¹²Manieren. ¹³Plätze.

A friend of Dean¹ Swift one day sent him a turbot², as a present³, by a servant, who had frequently been on similar errands⁴, but who had never received the most trifling mark of the Dean's generosity. Having gained admission⁵, he opened the door of the study⁶, and abruptly⁷ putting (*imp.*) down† the fish, (and) cried very rudely⁸, "Master⁹ has sent you a turbot." "Young man," said the Dean, rising from his easy-chair, "is that the way you deliver your message¹⁰? Let me¹¹ teach you better manners¹²; sit down in my chair, we will change situations¹³, and I will show you how to behave

* In German the *article* generally precedes titles, although to leave it out is not a mistake.

† Avoid using the *German Present Participle as much as possible*. Circumscribe it by the *imperfect* and „und," as above, or by a corresponding *conjunction*, as e.g., als, da, indem, nachdem, weil (reason).

Ex.: Going to the door, he locked it, er ging an die Thüre und verschloß dieselbe.

Seeing that I was welcome, als (da), ich sah, daß ich willkommen war.

Thinking he would not return, indem ich glaubte, er werde nicht zurückkommen.

After having seen the castle, als (nachdem) ich das Schloß gesehen hatte.

Likewise also when the *Present Participle in English* stands for a *Relative Pronoun*, the latter is to be put in *German*: A dog barking at the moon, ein Hund, der (welcher) den Mond anbellt.

¹⁴ Sir, my master, &c. . . . compliments, mein Herr läßt sich Ihnen bestens empfehlen. ¹⁵ Wirklich! ¹⁶ Return him my best thanks, richten Sie ihm meinen besten Dank aus. ¹⁷ Ein Thaler für Sie. ¹⁸ Da . . . sich so zur Freigebigkeit ermaßigt sah. ¹⁹ Einen Kronenthaler. ²⁰ Wit, Wiß, m.

in future." The boy sat down; and the Dean, going (*imp.*) to the door, came to the table with a respectful pace, and making a low bow, said, "Sir, my master presents his kind compliments ¹⁴, hopes you are well, and requests your acceptance of a small present." "Does he ¹⁵?" replied the boy; "return him my best thanks ¹⁶, and there's half-a-crown for yourself ¹⁷." The Dean, thus drawn into an act of generosity ¹⁸, laughed heartily, and gave the boy a crown ¹⁹ for his wit ²⁰.

42. THE HORSE-SHOE NAIL.

Der Hufnagel. — ¹ Put a full stop, and continue by: Er machte gute Geschäfte. ² Daß es Zeit sei. ³ Before night-fall, vor dem Einbruch der Nacht. ⁴ So, daher, &c. ⁵ Auf sein Pferd. ⁶ Machte sich auf den Weg. ⁷ Vorführte. ⁸ Mit Erlaubniß.

(I.) A farmer once went to market ¹, and, meeting with good luck, he sold all his corn, and filled his purse with silver and gold. Then he thought it time ² to return, in order to reach home before night-fall ³; so ⁴ he packed his money-bags upon his horse's back ⁵, and set out on his journey ⁶.

(II.) At noon he stopped in a village to rest; and, when he was starting again, the ostler, as he led out ⁷ the horse, said, "Please you ⁸, sir, the left shoe behind

⁹ The left shoe behind has lost a nail, es fehlt ein Nagel hinten im linken Hufeisen. ¹⁰ Das thut nichts; hat nichts zu sagen; einerlei. ¹¹ Will hold, &c., wird schon halten. ¹² Zu machen. ¹³ To bait (his horse), um zu füttern ¹⁴ Der Stallknecht. ¹⁵ Laß das. ¹⁶ To travel, gehen. ¹⁷ Not far, nicht lange. Da sah sich der Bauer genöthigt. ¹⁹ Liegen, Inf. ²⁰ Loszusehnallen. ²¹ Definite Art. ²² Did not . . . till, erst spät . . . ²³ Von der Vernachlässigung.

has lost a nail⁹." "Let it go¹⁰," answered the farmer; "the shoe will hold fast enough¹¹ for the twenty miles that I have still to travel¹². I'm in haste." So saying, he journeyed on.

(III.) In the afternoon the farmer stopped again to bait¹³ his horse; and, as he was sitting in the inn, the stable-boy¹⁴ came, and said, "Sir, your horse has lost a nail in his left shoe behind: shall I take him to the blacksmith?" "Let him alone¹⁵, answered the farmer; "I've only six miles farther to go, and the horse will travel¹⁶ well enough that distance. I've no time to lose."

(IV.) Away rode the farmer; but he had not gone far before the horse began to limp; it had not limped far¹⁷ before it began to stumble; and it had not stumbled long before it fell down and broke a leg.

(V.) The farmer was obliged¹⁸ to leave the horse lying¹⁹ in the road, to unstrap²⁰ his bags, throw them over his²¹ shoulder, and make his way as well as he could home on foot, where he did not arrive till late at²² night. "All my ill-luck," said the farmer to himself, "comes from neglect²³ of a horse-shoe-nail."—*Constable's English Reading Book.*

43. THE IRON MASK.

Der Mann mit der eisernen Maske. — ¹ An unknown person, ein Unbekannter. ² Mit dem größten Geheimniß. ³ Transferred to, nach . . . gebracht. ⁴ Extremely well made, von äußerst schöner Gestalt. ⁵ His education, &c., er schien sehr gut gebildet. ⁶ Mit. ⁷ Guitarrenspiel. ⁸ Federn. ⁹ Daß. ¹⁰ To intrust one to one's charge, einen der Oberaufsicht eines andern übergeben. ¹¹ Translate — And when he was appointed (ernannt). ¹² Zum. ¹³ Repeat, begleitete. ¹⁴ In die Bastille. ¹⁵ Man hat sich in Muthmaßungen erschöpft. ¹⁶ Zur Zeit. ¹⁷ Verhaftet. ¹⁸ In. ¹⁹ Kammerdiener.

(I.) The "Iron Mask" is the name of an unknown person¹ who was conveyed in the most secret manner² to the castle of Pignerol, from whence he was transferred³ to the isle of Ste Marguerite. He was a man taller than ordinary, and extremely well made⁴. His education appeared to have been carefully attended to⁵; and he amused himself by⁶ reading, and playing upon the guitar⁷. He always wore a mask with steel springs⁸, which was so constructed as⁹ to allow him free liberty to eat and drink. His keepers treated him with the greatest respect. At Pignerol he was intrusted to the charge¹⁰ of an officer named St Mars, on whose appointment¹¹ as¹² lieutenant of the isles this unknown personage accompanied him, as he finally did¹³ to the Bastille¹⁴, where he died in 1703, and was buried under the name of Marchiali. Conjecture has exhausted itself¹⁵ to discover who this mysterious personage might be. Voltaire observes, that at the period¹⁶ when the prisoner was confined¹⁷, no man of importance disappeared from¹⁸ Europe; and yet it cannot be doubted that he must have been one. Laborde, first valet-de-chambre¹⁹ of Louis XIV., and who had received from this

²⁰ Zu entdecken, wer er wäre. ²¹ Haft, f. ²² Dürfen . . . nicht. ²³ Wie das Gerücht ging. ²⁴ Weil er, &c. ²⁵ Der, wie das Gerücht ging . . . getödtet werden. ²⁶ Der, angeblich . . . ²⁷ Entzogen. ²⁸ Untersuchung. ²⁹ Which precedes the romance . . . welche dem Roman . . . vorangeht ist. ³⁰ Goes so far as to give, &c., giebt sogar, &c. ³¹ To give satisfactory evidence, hinreichende Beweise liefern. ³² To establish hypotheses, Meinungen als begründet feststellen.

prince many proofs of confidence, showed a desire to discover him ²⁰. The king replied, "I pity him, but his detention ²¹ injures only himself, and has prevented great misfortunes; you cannot ²² know him."

(II.) The author of "Secret Memoirs," published in 1745, pretends that it was the Count of Vermandois, who was arrested, it was said ²³, for ²⁴ having given a blow to the dauphin. Lagrange Chancel, in a letter to Fréron, attempts to prove that the prisoner is the Duke of Beaufort, reported ²⁵ to have been killed at the siege of Candia. St Foix, in 1768, wished to prove that he was the Duke of Monmouth, who was said ²⁶ to have been beheaded in London, but who had been withdrawn from ²⁷ punishment. In a dissertation ²⁸ which precedes the romance ²⁹ of "The Man with the Iron Mask," by Regnault Warin, the author endeavours to prove that this mysterious personage was the son of the Duke of Buckingham and Anne of Austria, and goes so far as to ³⁰ give the portrait of the prisoner. But still no satisfactory evidence ³¹ has yet been given to establish any one of the hypotheses ³², and the history of the "Masque de Fer" is, perhaps for ever, hidden beneath an impenetrable veil.—MAUNDER'S *Biographical Treasury*.

44. THE MONKEY AND THE TWO CATS.

A FABLE.—Eine Fabel.

Der Affe und die zwei Katzen. — ¹ Ihre Beute. ² To settle the dispute, den Streit zu schlichten. ³ To refer, vorlegen. ⁴ Lasset sehen. ⁵ Dieser Brocken ist schwerer als . ⁶ To bite off, wegbeißen. ⁷ Um es, meinte er, in's Gleichgewicht zu bringen. ⁸ Comp. ⁹ Waß. ¹⁰ Neu. ¹¹ To be alarmed for the event, den Ausgang fürchten. ¹² Unfern gegenseitigen Antheil. ¹³ A case of this intricate nature, ein so verwickelter Fall. ¹⁴ By no means, durchaus nicht. ¹⁵ To determine, entscheiden. ¹⁶ Translate, hereupon.

Two cats, having stolen (some) cheese, could not agree about dividing their prize¹. In order, therefore, to settle the dispute², they consented to refer the matter³ to a monkey. The proposed arbitrator very readily accepted the office; and, producing a balance, put a part into each scale. "Let me see⁴," said he; "ay! this lump outweighs⁵ the other;" and immediately he bit off⁶ a considerable piece in order to reduce it, he observed, to an equilibrium⁷. The opposite scale was now become the heaviest⁸; which⁹ afforded our conscientious judge an additional¹⁰ reason for a second mouthful. "Hold! hold!" said the two cats, who began to be alarmed for the event¹¹; "give us our respective shares¹², and we are satisfied." "If you are satisfied," returned the monkey, "Justice is not; a case of this intricate nature¹³ is by no means¹⁴ so soon determined¹⁵." Upon which¹⁶ he continued to nibble first at one piece and then the other, till the poor cats, seeing their cheese gradually diminishing, entreated him to give himself no farther trouble, but deliver to them what remained. "Not so fast, I beseech you, friends," replied the monkey; "we owe justice to

¹⁷ In right of, kraft (Gen.)*

ourselves as well as to you : what remains is due to me in right ¹⁷ of my office." Upon which he crammed the whole into his mouth, and with great gravity dismissed the court.—DODSLEY.

45. THE OLD MAN AND HIS ASS.

Der Alte und sein Esel.—¹ Translate, to sell it. ² To be trudging on foot, zu Fuß einherzutappen. ³ That his ass, &c., um seinem Esel die Mühe zu ersparen. ⁴ Hallo, Junge. ⁵ Zu. ⁶ Setzte sich selbst darauf. ⁷ Kerl. ⁸ Is almost crippled . . . fast lahm wird vor. ⁹ No sooner, kaum . . . to begin the phrase. ¹⁰ Als er seinen Sohn hinter sich aufsitzen ließ.

(I.) An old man and a little boy were driving an ass to the next market to sell ¹. "What a fool is this fellow," says (*imp.*) a man upon the road, "to be trudging it on foot ² with his son, that this ass may go light ³!" The old man hearing this set his boy upon the ass, and went whistling by the side of him. "Why, sirrah ⁴!" cried a second man to the boy, "is it fit for you to be riding, while your poor old father is walking on ⁵ foot?" The father, upon this rebuke, took down his boy from the ass, and mounted himself ⁶. "Do you see," says a third, "how the lazy old knave ⁷ rides along upon his beast, while his poor little boy is almost crippled with ⁸ walking?" The old man no sooner ⁹ heard this, than he took up his son behind him ¹⁰.

(II.) "Pray, honest friend," says a fourth, "is that ass your own?"—"Yes," says the man.—"One would not

* See HAYET and SCHRUMPF'S "German Studies," Lesson 47

¹¹ One would not have thought so, daß möchte wohl kaum Jemand denken. ¹² Weil. ¹³ Alles, den Leuten zu gefallen. ¹⁴ To alight, absteigen. ¹⁵ Mit Hülfe einer Stange. ¹⁶ Lächerlich. ¹⁷ Schaarenweise. ¹⁸ Conceiving a dislike to the over-complaisance, der übertriebenen Gefälligkeit seines Meisters müde. ¹⁹ To burst asunder, zerreißen. ²⁰ Nachte, daß er nach Hause kam. ²¹ Translate, full of shame and vexation. ²² Um. ²³ Into the bargain, noch obendrein.

have thought so ¹¹," replied the other, "by ¹² your loading him so unmercifully. You and your son are better able to carry the poor beast than he you."—"Anything to please ¹³," says the owner; and alighting ¹⁴ with his son, they tied the legs of the ass together, and by the help of a pole ¹⁵ endeavoured to carry him upon their shoulders over the bridge that led to the town.

This was so entertaining ¹⁶ a sight that the people ran in crowds ¹⁷ to laugh at it, till the ass, conceiving a dislike to the over-complaisance ¹⁸ of his master, burst asunder ¹⁹ the cords that tied him, slipped from the pole, and tumbled into the river (*verb*). The poor old man made the best of his way home ²⁰, ashamed and vexed ²¹ that, by ²² endeavouring to please everybody, he had pleased nobody, and lost his ass into the bargain ²³.—HORACE WALPOLE.

In German, the Subjunctive Mood is employed in the following cases:—

1. After certain CONJUNCTIONS :

- a. Damit, damit . . . nicht; as, Laufe, damit du den Zug erreichst, Run, that you may catch the train; Schweigen Sie, damit man Sie nicht erkenne, Be silent, lest you be recognised.
- b. Wenn, if, and ob, if, whether; as, Wenn ich reich wäre, If I were rich; Wenn er mehr Übung hätte, If he had practice; Ich weiß nicht, ob er käme, wenn er es wüßte, I do not know whether he would come if he knew it.

c. als ob, als wenn, wie wenn, as if; e.g., Er hustet, als ob er die Auszehrung hätte, He coughs as if he had the consumption.

Note: Sometimes the conjunction *wenn* is understood. In this case, the verb is placed at the beginning of the sentence:

Hätte ich das gewußt, Had I known that; Wäre ich Albert, so bliebe ich nicht hier, If I were Albert, I should not stay here.

2. After VERBS of *advising, begging, commanding, wishing, permitting, hoping, fearing, doubting, &c.*, the verb in the dependent sentence beginning with *daß*, stands, or ought to stand, in the *subjunctive*. Yet, in conversation, the *indicative* is, even by the best society, very generally used.

3. As to the *subjunctive* required in the *oblique narration*, see foot-note to No. 54.

46. GEOGRAPHY.*

Die Geographie (Erdbeschreibung). — ¹ Kennen. ² In der Nähe or benachbart (adj.) ³ Weil. ⁴ This is a little knowledge of, das sind die Anfangsgründe der (von). ⁵ Is best obtained, lernt man sie am leichtesten und besten. ⁶ The most of, das meiste von. ⁷ Reisebücher. ⁸ Supply, &c., geben uns darüber Aufschluß

(I.) We all know¹ something of the place in which we live. We have seen its houses, roads, and fields so often that we can easily point them out, and tell how they are situated. We also know something about the towns and villages near², from³ having seen them. This is a little knowledge⁴ of geography; and in this way a knowledge of geography is best obtained⁵. We cannot expect, however, to get an extended knowledge of distant parts by our own observation; we must therefore learn most of⁶ our geography from what others have observed. Books of travels⁷ and voyages supply information of this kind⁸.

(II.) It will help us to understand much of what we read about other parts, if we think well on what we see

* See HAVET and SCHRUMPF'S "German Studies," Lesson 66, „Die Länder der Erde.“

⁹ Zu diesem Zwecke. ¹⁰ Wie er heißt. ¹¹ Surround us. ¹² Is grown, wächst.
¹³ Are produced in it, dort vorkommen. ¹⁴ To inquire, fragen (nach).
¹⁵ Hervorbringt, liefert. ¹⁶ And other remarkable facts about it, und
 andere darauf bezügliche wichtige Thatfachen. ¹⁷ Uns mit . . . bekannt machen.
¹⁸ Ein sogenanntes "county." The German word „Graffschaft,"
 meaning the estate of a count, does not quite give the meaning.
 In a free way we might say: Distrikt, Bezirk, Kanton. ¹⁹ Von dem
 Gipfel eines Berges. ²⁰ Translate, long . . . broad. ²¹ Eine lange
 Tagereise. ²² Es zu durchwandern. ²³ Es find.

in our own neighbourhood. For this purpose⁹ we should learn all we can respecting the place we live in ;—what it is called¹⁰ ;—what rivers are near ;—what hills and valleys are close by¹¹ ;—how many houses and people belong to the place ;—how most of the people are employed ;—what is grown¹² in the fields; what other things are produced¹³ in it ; and many other facts of this kind. We may now inquire¹⁴ the names of the towns, villages, hills, and rivers near. The towns we shall learn have a market; the villages are generally smaller than the towns, and have no regular market. We may then inquire what each place produces¹⁵, and other remarkable facts about it¹⁶.

(III.) We shall thus get acquainted with¹⁷ the geography of our own neighbourhood. We may then learn that many towns, villages, hills, valleys, fields, and meadows, make (up) what is called a county¹⁸: a county therefore consists of a large tract of country, more indeed than we can generally see from the top of a high hill¹⁹. The county we live in is several miles in length and breadth²⁰, so that it would be a long day's work²¹ to walk through it²². There are²³ (as many as) forty counties in England. England contains a great many towns and villages, together with a large number of hills and valleys, rivers and lakes.

²⁴ To travel through, zu durchwandern.

It would take us more than a year to travel through ²⁴ all parts of England.—CRAMPTON AND TURNER'S *Geographical Reading Book*.

47. RIVERS.*

(A GEOGRAPHICAL LESSON.)

Die Flüsse. (Geographischer Unterricht.)—¹ Streams of running water, laufende Gewässer. ² Darüber schreiten. ³ Breit. ⁴ For ships to sail on, daß man mit Schiffen darauf fahren kann. ⁵ Bächlein. ⁶ Bäche. ⁷ An individual name, einen besondern. ⁸ Der Rhein. ⁹ Von der Höhe nach der Tiefe. ¹⁰ At first, ursprünglich. ¹¹ Would soon become dry, lägen bald trocken. ¹² Zufuhr, f. ¹³ Ströme.

Streams of running water¹ are so common that you must have often noticed them. Some streams are so small that we can step over them², while others are deep and wide³ enough for large ships to sail on⁴. Small streams are called streamlets⁵ or brooks⁶, while the larger (water-courses are) called rivers. Each river has an individual⁷ name, as the Thames, the Rhine⁸, &c. If we observe a running stream we shall see that the water flows from higher to lower ground⁹. We may inquire, however, as to where the water comes from at first¹⁰. The beds of rivers would soon become dry¹¹ if there were not fresh supplies¹² (*sing.*) After much dry weather there is little or no water in brooks; but these (*fit*) are quite full again after much rain. It must be the rain, therefore, that fills the brooks and streams¹³; so that they flow down from the hills and mountains to the lower plains and valleys, joining

* See HAVET and SCHRUMPF'S "German Studies," Lesson 58, „Die Gewässer.“

¹⁴ To join one another, sich mit einander vereinigen. ¹⁵ One large stream, ein großes Wasser. ¹⁶ Ober einen Fluß (oder Strom). ¹⁷ Kleinere Gewässer. ¹⁸ Münden in größere, oder werden Flüsse und Ströme. ¹⁹ Ocean. ²⁰ Mündung, f.

one another ¹⁴ in their course, and at last form one large stream ¹⁵ or river ¹⁶. Thus streams ¹⁷ fall into or become rivers ¹⁸; and these generally discharge their waters into a lake or the ocean ¹⁹. The part of the river where it flows into the sea or lake is called its mouth ²⁰.—CRAMPTON AND TURNER'S *Geographical Reading Book*.

48. A CLERGYMAN'S REPARTÉE.

Treffende Antwort eines Geistlichen. — ¹ Bischof. ² Prälat. ³ Schriftsteller. ⁴ Auf einer Visitation. ⁵ To call over, aufrufen. ⁶ Use „man“—to make a complaint of, sich beklagen über. ⁷ Weil er so schlecht predige.

(GILBERT BURNET, Bishop¹ of Salisbury, a learned prelate² and industrious writer³, author of the “History of the Reformation,” “History of his Own Times,” &c., was born in Edinburgh in 1643, and died in 1715.)

Bishop* Burnet was on one of his visitations⁴, when the name of a very old clergyman was called over⁵ (of whom a complaint had been made⁶ that the parish could not endure him, because he gave such bad sermons⁷); the

* In general the article is more frequently employed in German than in English. Its use in many cases coincides with the *French*. Before common names, immediately followed by a proper name, it is customary, though not always binding, to use it: Queen Elizabeth, die Königin Elisabeth. But when the so-called Saxon genitive is employed, the article (on account of the inversion) cannot be used: King Henry's reign, König (not des Königs) Heinrich's Regierung.

⁸ Your parish is, ist ihre Pfarrei. ⁹ Aus dem Stegreif. ¹⁰ Or instead of. ¹¹ Giving your own compositions, ihre eigenen Aufsätze zum Besien zu geben. ¹² Brauchen Sie nur. ¹³ Die Leute. ¹⁴ Zu. ¹⁵ Entschuldigenden bischöfliche Gnaden. ¹⁶ You have been, &c., man hat Sie ganz falsch unterrichtet. ¹⁷ I have long been in the habit of, &c., ich pflege schon lange gedruckte Predigten zu halten. ¹⁸ And those I have preferred, und meine Lieblings-Predigten sind die von, &c.

bishop gravely chided the poor parson,—“I am told (as I hear) Mr —, (that) your parish is ⁸ very well satisfied with you in many respects, but they are much discontented with your sermons. Now there is no excuse for this; for, instead of preaching extempore ⁹, as I am told you sometimes do, or ¹⁰ giving your own compositions ¹¹, you have only ¹² to preach good printed sermons, and they ¹³ will have no cause for ¹⁴ complaint.”—“May it please your Lordship ¹⁵,” replied the clergyman, “you have been wholly misinformed ¹⁶. I have long been in the habit of preaching printed sermons ¹⁷, and those I have preferred ¹⁸ are your Lordship’s.”

49. THE STEPPES.

Die Steppen.—¹ Hunderte von Meilen. ² One may, man kann. ³ A dead level, eine vollständige Ebene. ⁴ Leipzig. ⁵ The phantom of atmospheric refraction, ein durch Strahlenbrechung erzeugtes Luftbild.

Hundreds of leagues ¹ may be ² traversed east from the Dnieper without variation of scene. A dead level ³ of thin but luxuriant ⁴ pasture, bounded only by the horizon; day after day the same unbroken monotony fatigues the eye. Sometimes there is the appearance of a lake, which vanishes on approach, the phantom of atmospheric refraction ⁵.

⁶ Leben. ⁷ Pfadlos. ⁸ Wird. ⁹ Tumult! ¹⁰ Die Rinnale. ¹¹ They cut —translate, they carve to themselves, sich hauen. ¹² Die sengende Sommer Sonne. ¹³ Are parched, vertrocknen die Steppen vollständig. ¹⁴ Regenschauer, m. ¹⁵ Eine feurige Kugel. ¹⁶ Sie. ¹⁷ Obscured by a thick mist from the evaporation, von einem undurchbringlichen Nebelbunst umhüllt. ¹⁸ Zu Tausenden. ¹⁹ Das Thier- und Pflanzenreich.

Horses and cattle without number give some animation ⁶ to the scene, so long as the steppes are green, but winter comes in * October, and then they become a trackless ⁷ field of spotless snow. Fearful storms rage, and the dry snow is ⁸ driven by the gale with a violence which neither man nor animal can resist, whilst the sky is clear, and the sun shines bright and cold above the earthly turmoil ⁹. The contest between spring and winter is long and severe, yet when gentler gales succeed, and the waters run off in torrents through the channels ¹⁰ which they cut ¹¹ in the soft ground, the earth is again verdant. The scorching summer's sun ¹² is as severe in its consequences in these wild regions as the winter is cold. In June the steppes are parched ¹³, no shower ¹⁴ falls, nor does a drop of dew refresh the thirsty and rent earth. The sun rises and sets like a globe of fire ¹⁵, and during the day he ¹⁶ is obscured by a thick mist from the evaporation ¹⁷. In some seasons the drought is excessive; the air is filled with dust, the springs become dry, and cattle perish in thousands ¹⁸. (Art.) Death triumphs over animal and vegetable nature ¹⁹, and desolation tracks the scene to

* When speaking of divisions of time, and *naming* the days or months, the Germans always use the *article* with the preposition, thus: am Sonntag, im October (for an dem, in dem). The same is the case as to the four seasons of the year: im Frühling, im Sommer, im Herbst, im Winter. See "German Studies," Lesson 14.

²⁰ And desolation, &c., und soweit das Auge reicht, nichts als Verwüstung.

²¹ A hideous wreck, eine häßliche Wüste.

the utmost verge of the horizon ²⁰; a hideous wreck ²¹.—

MRS SOMERVILLE.

50. THE DERVISE.

Der Dervisch. — ¹ Die Tartarei. ² Aus Irrthum. ³ Thinking it to be, den er für . . . hielt. ⁴ A public inn, eine öffentliche Herberge. ⁵ Eine Karavanserai. ⁶ Entered he, betrat er. ⁷ Nach Art der Orientalen. ⁸ Nicht lange war er. ⁹ What was his business in that place, was er da wolle. ¹⁰ To take up his night's lodging, seine Nachtherberge aufschlagen. ¹¹ In a very angry manner, in sehr heftiger Weise. ¹² It happened that = by chance, zufällig . . . verb. ¹³ Passed, kam. ¹⁴ At, über. ¹⁵ So einfältig.

A dervise, travelling through Tartary¹, being arrived at the town of Balck, went into the king's palace by mistake², thinking it to be³ a public inn⁴ or caravansary⁵. Having looked about for some time, he entered⁶ (into) a long gallery, where he laid down his wallet and spread his carpet, in order to repose himself upon it, after the manner of the Eastern nations⁷. He had not been⁸ long in this position before he was discovered by some of the guards, who asked him what was his business in that place⁹. The dervise told them he intended to take up his night's lodging¹⁰ in that caravansary. The guards let him know, in a very angry manner¹¹, that the house he was in was not a caravansary, but the king's palace. It happened that¹² the king himself passed¹³ through the gallery during this debate, and, smiling at¹⁴ the mistake of the dervise, asked him how he could be so dull¹⁵ as not to distinguish a palace from a caravansary, "Sire, give me leave to ask

¹⁶ Sire, &c., erlauben mir Euer Majestät ein paar Fragen zu stellen.

¹⁷ The persons, Zent. ¹⁸ Put *first* before lodged, zuerst bewohnten (Acc.); do not translate, when it was first built. ¹⁹ My ancestors, meine Ahnen. ²⁰ The last person, der Letzte. ²¹ It was he himself, das sei er selbst. ²² Seine Bewohner. ²³ Such a perpetual succession of guests, stets neue Gäste.

your Majesty a question or two¹⁶. Who were the persons¹⁷ who lodged in this house when it was first built¹⁸?" The king replied, "my ancestors¹⁹." "And who," says the dervise, "was the last person²⁰ who lodged here?" The king replied, "my father." "And who is it," says the dervise, "that lodges here at present?" The king told him that it was he, himself²¹. "And who," says the dervise, "will be here after you?" The king answered, "the young prince*, my son." "Ah, Sire," said the dervise, "a house that changes its inhabitants²² so often, and receives such a perpetual succession of guests²³ is not a palace, but a caravansary."—ADDISON.

51. MINERS.†

Bergleute. —¹ Der Bergmann—pl. Leute. ² Class of people, Völkchen.

(I.) Miners¹ are generally a poor, but an honest and industrious class of people², quiet and earnest at their ‡

* *Prince*, meaning emperor, king, grand-duke, duke or (sovereign) prince, is Fürst. The same is sometimes a title given for merit, as, Fürst Bismarck (the French *duc*, e.g., le duc de Magenta). Prinz means but the son of a sovereign, or *titulary* „Fürst," e.g., Prinz Friedrich Karl, Prince Frederick Charles. The same difference is between Fürstin and Prinzessin.

† See HAVET and SCHRUMPF'S "German Studies," Lesson 67, "Minerals."

‡ See foot-note p. 11.

⁸ Eigenthümliche Menschengattung. ⁴ To be different, abstecken. ⁵ The townsman, der Städter. ⁶ Sing. ⁷ Spitzhade. ⁸ Proceeds to work, gräbt. ⁹ To carry out, machen. ¹⁰ Durchwühlt er die Felsen nach Erzen schürfenb. ¹¹ Die Gruben, Erzgruben. ¹² To sink, austiefen. ¹³ Man. ¹⁴ To require, brauchen. ¹⁵ Den meisten Gefahren. ¹⁶ Fangen. ¹⁷ Stidgase. ¹⁸ Das Gewölbe.

work, but cheerful and fond of musical entertainment in their * hours of recreation. Separate manners, habits, and dress, as well as a peculiar language for everything concerning their occupation, make the miners a characteristic set of men³, and singularly different⁴ from agriculturists, sailors, or townsmen⁵. With his tools⁶, consisting of a pickaxe⁷, hammer, and crowbar, and provided with a safety lamp, the miner proceeds to work⁸ shafts (Schächte) vertically down into the ground, forming deep pits, or he carries out⁹ galleries (Gänge) in horizontal directions, and by combining these two ways he penetrates the rock in search of ore¹⁰.

(II.) Mines¹¹ are sometimes of immense extent, some shafts having been sunk¹² to the depth of 3000 feet. The galleries extend in some mines to an astonishing length, as, for example, the George-gallery (der Georgen-Gang) in the Harz, which it¹³ requires¹⁴ three hours to pass through. The calling of the miner, besides being very toilsome, is, next to that of the sailor, exposed to the greatest amount of danger¹⁵. Sometimes† a sudden irruption of water from below or from the sides, sometimes the fire-damp (die bösen Wetter, plur.), which explodes on taking¹⁶ fire, or suffocating gases¹⁷, prove destructive to them. At times, also, the roof¹⁸ of the

* See foot-note, p. 11.

† Supply *it is*, and construe accordingly.

mine itself gives way, either from negligence in propping or from unavoidable concussions, and buries the miners alive.—H. MEDLOCK'S *Translation of Schoedler's Book of Nature*.

52. A LETTER FROM BYRON TO HIS MOTHER.

Ein Brief von Byron an seiner Mutter. — ¹To have to spare, übrig haben. ²To be, müssen. ³I cannot avoid, ich kann nicht umhin (but here the inversion, kann ich nicht, is required). ⁴Die Gelegenheit zu ergreifen. ⁵Ich bin erst seit kurzer Zeit auf Malta. ⁶Fertile in, reich an. ⁷In a romance, in einem Roman. ⁸Triest. ⁹Wird sie sich bald . . . einschiffen. ¹⁰By this time, bereits.

DEAR MOTHER,—Though I have a very short time to spare¹, being² to sail immediately for Greece, I cannot avoid³ taking an opportunity⁴ of telling you that I am well. I have been in Malta a short time⁵, and have found (*pres.*) the inhabitants hospitable and pleasant. This letter is committed to the care of a very extraordinary woman, whom you have doubtless heard of, Mrs S—— P——. She has been shipwrecked, and her life has been from its commencement so fertile⁶ in remarkable incidents, that in a romance⁷ they would appear improbable. She was born at Constantinople, where her father was Austrian ambassador: . . . she is here on her way to England to join her husband. Being obliged to leave Trieste⁸, where she was paying a visit to her mother, she embarks⁹ soon in a ship of war. Since my arrival here, I have found her very pretty, very accomplished, and extremely eccentric.

You have seen Murray and Robert by this time¹⁰, and

¹¹ Nach. ¹² Gefe. ¹³ Among the Mussulmans, bei den Muselmännern.

received my letter. Little has happened since that date. I have touched at Cagliari in Sardinia, and at Girgenti in Sicily, and embark to-morrow for ¹¹ Patras, whence I proceed ¹² to Janina, where Ali Pacha holds (his) court; so I shall soon be among the Mussulmans ¹³. Adieu.—

Believe me, &c.,

BYRON.

53. LEDYARD THE TRAVELLER.

A BIOGRAPHICAL SKETCH.—Eine biographische Skizze.

Ledyard der Wanderer.—¹ Ein amerikanischer Reisender. ² For a short time he resided, eine Zeit lang lebte er bei den sogenannten Six Nations, oder Sechs Stämmen. ³ Ließ sich als Matrose anwerben. ⁴ Eine Beschreibung. ⁵ Hierauf. ⁶ Um. ⁷ Zu Fuß. ⁸ Petersburg. ⁹ In the prosecution of this design, dieses Ziel verfolgend. ¹⁰ Nachdem.

(I.) John Ledyard, an American traveller¹, of the last century, was born in Connecticut, in 1751. For a short time he resided² among the Six Nations*, with whose language and manners he became acquainted. He then came to England, enlisted as a marine³, and sailed with Captain Cook on his second voyage, of which he published an account⁴. He next⁵ determined to make the tour of⁶ the globe from London eastwards on foot⁷, and proceeded to St Petersburg⁸ in the prosecution of this design⁹ through the most unfrequented parts of Finland.

(II.) After¹⁰ waiting there nearly three months, he ob-

* One branch of those "Six Nations," the *Seneca* tribe, is to be found in a half-civilised state, at the Indian Reservation, Cattaraugus County, New York.

¹¹ Seinen Paß. ¹² For the prosecution, zur Fortsetzung. ¹³ Durch den russischen Platzcommandanten. ¹⁴ Prevented from, &c., an der Fortsetzung seiner Reise gehindert. ¹⁵ To the frontier of Poland, an die polnische Gränze. ¹⁶ Daß man ihn der Senkershand überliefern würde, sollte man . . . ¹⁷ Auf russischem Gebiete. ¹⁸ Beauftragt. ¹⁹ When he was attacked, als ihn eine tödliche Krankheit befiel.

tained his passport ¹¹ for the prosecution ¹² of his journey to Siberia. On his arrival at Yakutsk, he was prevented by the Russian commandant of the place ¹³ from proceeding any farther ¹⁴, and was conducted to the frontiers of Poland ¹⁵, with a threat of being consigned into the hands of the executioner, should he ¹⁶ again be found in the Russian territories ¹⁷. He was next employed ¹⁸ by the African Association to explore the interior of Africa, but he had proceeded no farther than Cairo, when he was attacked with a fatal disease ¹⁹, and died in 1788.—*MAUNDER'S Biographical Treasury.*

54. GEORGE PRIMROSE WISHES TO TEACH THE DUTCH ENGLISH.

Georg Primrose will die Holländer Englisch lehren. — ¹ Translate—Gerade als ich ausgehen wollte, begegnete ich. ² Einem alten oberflächlichen Bekannten. ³ To be one's companion, einem Gesellschaft leisten. ⁴ Pfliegte.

(I.) As I was going out I was met ¹ at the door by the captain of a ship, with whom I had formerly some little acquaintance ², and he agreed to be my companion ³ over a bowl of punch. As I never chose ⁴ to make a secret of my circumstances, he assured me that I was upon the very point of ruin. "But," continued he, "I fancy you

⁵ You might be very easily put into a genteel way of bread,
 Sie könnten leicht Gelegenheit finden auf respectable Weise Ihr Brod
 zu verdienen. ⁷ Folgen Sie meinem Rath. ⁸ Nach. ⁹ Wie wäre es, wenn
 Sie mitreis'ten? ¹⁰ I'll warrant, ich stehe Ihnen gut. ¹¹ Zweifelte. ¹² Ob.
¹³ To affirm with an oath, schwören. ¹⁴ To be fond of something to
 distraction, in etwas ganz vernarrt sein. ¹⁵ Versicherung. ¹⁶ Ging ich auf
 seinen Vorschlag ein. ¹⁷ Wir hatten günstigen Wind. ¹⁸ Mit der Hälfte
 meines beweglichen Eigenthumes. ¹⁹ A stranger, fremd und unbekannt.
²⁰ Unemployed in teaching, ohne mich sogleich an's Lehren zu machen.
²¹ Ich wendete mich an zwei oder drei Vorübergehende. ²² Deren Aeußeres.
²³ Uns gegenseitig verständlich zu machen. ²⁴ Now only, jetzt erst. ²⁵ Um zu.

might be very easily put into a genteel way of bread⁵
 Take my advice⁷. My ship sails to-morrow for⁸ Amster-
 dam. What if you go in her as a passenger⁹? The
 moment¹⁰ you land, all you have to do is to teach the
 Dutchmen English, and I'll warrant¹⁰ you'll get pupils and
 money enough. I suppose you understand English," added
 he, "by this time." I confidently assured him of that,
 but expressed a doubt¹¹ whether¹² the Dutch would be
 willing to learn English. He affirmed me with an oath¹³
 that they were fond of it to distraction¹⁴; and upon that
 affirmation¹⁵ I agreed¹⁶ with his proposal, and embarked
 the next day to teach the Dutch English in Holland.

(II.) The wind was fair¹⁷, our voyage short, and, after
 having paid my passage with half my movables¹⁸, I found
 myself, as if fallen from the skies, a stranger¹⁹ in one of
 the principal streets of Amsterdam. In this situation I
 was unwilling to let any time pass unemployed in teach-
 ing²⁰. I addressed myself, therefore, to two or three of
 those I met²¹, whose appearance²² seemed most promising;
 but it was impossible to make ourselves mutually under-
 stood²³. It was not till this very moment²⁴ I recollected,
 that in order to²⁵ teach the Dutchmen English, it was

²⁶ It was necessary that they should teach me Dutch, sie mich Holländisch lehren mußten. ²⁷ Konnte. ²⁸ An obvious objection; eine offenbare Schwierigkeit. ²⁹ Is to me amazing, Wunderlich mich immer noch.

necessary that they should * teach me Dutch²⁶. How I came²⁷ to overlook so obvious an objection²⁸ is to me amazing²⁹, but certain it is I overlooked it.—OLIVER GOLDSMITH'S *Vicar of Wakefield*.

55. ENGLAND AND SCOTLAND.

England und Schottland. — ¹ Greatly, viel. ² Produces better crops, fruchtbarer. ³ A great many more men, weit mehr Bewohner. ⁴ Both—and, sowohl—als auch. ⁵ Gentlemen, die Vornehmen—country people, Landleute.

(I.) England is the southern, and Scotland the northern part of the celebrated island called Great Britain. England is greatly¹ larger than Scotland, and the land is much richer, and produces better crops². There are also a great many more men³ in England, and both⁴ the gentlemen and the country people⁵ are more wealthy, and they

* Generally speaking the Germans have almost no settled rules concerning the use of the *subjunctive mood*. However, suffice it to say, that, when a person relates in the *imperfect tense* what he (himself) or another person *said* or *thought*, and does not mention the *exact words used*, but states the substance of them (or of his thoughts) in a subordinate clause, the narration is said to be oblique (Latin, *oratio obliqua*). This particularly takes place after the verbs, sagen, erklären, antworten, behaupten, glauben, denken, vermuthen, erzählen, when used in the *imperfect*. In all such quoted assertions and relations the verb in the dependent clause is either in the *imperfect* or *present* of the *subjunctive mood*. I thought he *was* gone, ich dachte er wäre or sei gegangen. He *said* his friend had left him, ihn verlassen hätte or habe.

⁶ In, von. ⁷ More numerous and more populous, zahl- und volkreicher. ⁸ Full of, reich an. ⁹ Which bear no corn, die kein Getreide hervorbringen. ¹⁰ Afford, bieten. ¹¹ Produces good crops, trägt gute Ernten. ¹² Accustomed to live more hardily, an eine rauhere Lebensweise gewöhnt. ¹³ Of grander effect to the eye, ansehnlicher. ¹⁴ Used, gebräuchlich. ¹⁵ Now, as, da nun. ¹⁶ That they should, &c., daß sie gut gegen einander gesinnt sein, und als ein Volk unter derselben Regierung leben sollten. ¹⁷ Accordingly, da nun. ¹⁸ Is called, heißt.

have better food and clothing than those in ⁶ Scotland. The towns, also, are much more numerous, and more populous ⁷.

(II.) Scotland, on the contrary, is full of ⁸ hills, and huge moors and wildernesses, which bear no corn ⁹ and afford ¹⁰ but little food for flocks of sheep or herds of cattle. But the level ground that lies along the great rivers is more fertile, and produces good crops ¹¹. The natives of Scotland are accustomed to live more hardily ¹² in general than those of England. The cities and towns are fewer, smaller, and less full of inhabitants than in England. But, as Scotland possesses great quarries of stone, the towns are commonly built of that material, which is more lasting, and has a grander effect to the eye ¹³, than the bricks used ¹⁴ in England *.

(III.) Now, as ¹⁵ these two nations (f.) live in the different ends of the same island, and are separated by large and stormy seas from all other parts of the world, it seems natural that they should have been friendly to each other, and that they should have lived as one people under the same government ¹⁶. Accordingly ¹⁷, about two hundred years ago, the king of Scotland, becoming king of England,

* "The bricks used in England," translate—"The in England used (gebräuchlichen) bricks."

the two nations have ever since been * joined in one great kingdom, which is called Great Britain.—WALTER SCOTT'S *Tales of a Grandfather*.

56. MAHOMET'S MIRACLES.

Mahomed's Wunder. — ¹ The votaries, die Verehrer. ² Increase, nehmen zu. ³ As they are further, &c., je weiter sie von . . . entfernt sind. ⁴ Went forth to meet him, (daß) ihm . . . entgegen gingen. ⁵ Gushed from, &c., seinen Fingern entströmte. ⁶ That a beam groaned to him, daß ein Balken ihn anächzte. ⁷ That a shoulder of mutton informed him that it was poisoned, daß ein Hammelsbug ihn benachrichtigte er sei vergiftet. ⁸ Successively, nach einander.

The votaries ¹ of Mahomet are more assured than himself of his miraculous gifts, and their confidence and credulity increase ² as they are further removed ³ from the time and place of his spiritual exploits. They believe or affirm that trees went forth to meet him ⁴; that he was saluted by stones; that water gushed from his fingers ⁵; that he fed the hungry and the sick, and raised the dead; that a beam groaned to him ⁶; that a camel complained to him; that a shoulder of mutton informed him of its being poisoned ⁷; and both animate and inanimate nature were equally subject to the apostle of God.

His dream of a nocturnal journey is seriously described as a real and corporeal transaction. A mysterious animal, the Borak (m.), conveyed him from the temple (m.) of Mecca to that of Jerusalem; with his companion Gabriel, he successively ⁸ ascended the seven heavens, and received

* The present tense to be used in German.

⁹ Repaid, erwieberte. ¹⁰ In their respective, in ihren betreffenden. ¹¹ Within two bowshots, auf zwei Bogenschußweiten. ¹² A cold that pierced him to the heart, einen Frost, der ihm bis in's Herz drang.

and repaid ⁹ the salutations of the patriarchs, the prophets, and the angels, in their respective ¹⁰ mansions. Beyond the seventh heaven Mahomet alone was permitted to proceed; he passed the veil of unity, approached within two bow-shots ¹¹ of the throne, and felt a cold that pierced him to the heart ¹² when his shoulder was touched by the hand of God. After a familiar, though important, conversation, he again descended to Jerusalem, remounted the Borak, returned to Mecca, and performed in the tenth part of a night the journey of many thousand years.—GIBBON'S *Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire*.

57. OLIVER GOLDSMITH TO SIR JOSHUA REYNOLDS.

Oliver Goldsmith an Sir Joshua Reynolds. — ¹ Ueberfahrt. ² My machine to prevent sea-sickness, meine Maschine (Vorrichtung) zur Verhütung der Seefrankheit. ³ To be imposed upon, sich prellen lassen. ⁴ Guter Laune. ⁵ A little money would go a great way, daß mit wenig Geld viel zu machen sei.

MY DEAR FRIEND,—We had a very quick passage ¹ from Dover to Calais, which we performed in three hours and twenty minutes, all of us extremely sea-sick, which must necessarily have happened, as my machine to prevent sea-sickness ² was not completed. We were glad to leave Dover, because we hated to be imposed upon ³, so were in high spirits ⁴ at coming to Calais, where we were told that a little money would go a great way ⁵. Upon landing two

⁶ Kerle. ⁷ Zugleich. ⁸ To run down to, auf etwas loslaufen. ⁹ Machten sich. ¹⁰ With a kind of funeral solemnity, wie eben so viele Särge (coffins). ¹¹ Jedes Individuum. ¹² That there was no refusing them, daß man es ihnen nicht abschlagen konnte. ¹³ Die auch so ihre nette, höfliche Art hatten. ¹⁴ Man wies uns. ¹⁵ Ein Lehnbedienter. ¹⁶ Endlich. ¹⁷ We had no occasion, wir brauchten . . . nicht. ¹⁸ Because he wanted it, weil er es nöthig hatte.

little trunks, which was all we carried with us, we were surprised to see fourteen or fifteen fellows ⁶ all ⁷ running down to ⁸ the ship to lay their hands upon them; four got ⁹ under each trunk, the rest surrounded and held the hasps; and in this manner our little baggage was conducted, with a kind of funeral solemnity ¹⁰, till it was safely lodged at the custom-house. We were well enough pleased with the people's civility till they came to be paid, when every creature ¹¹ that had the happiness of but touching our trunks with their finger, expected sixpence, and had so pretty civil a manner of demanding it, that there was no refusing them ¹². When we had done with the porters, we had next to speak with the custom-house officers, who had their pretty civil way too ¹³. We were directed ¹⁴ to the Hôtel d'Angleterre, where a valet de place ¹⁵ came to offer his service, and spoke to me ten minutes before I once ¹⁶ found out that he was speaking English. We had no occasion ¹⁷ for his services, so we gave him a little money because he spoke English, and because he wanted it ¹⁸.

58. THE SHIELD.

Der Schild. — ¹ Knight-errantry, die fahrende Ritterschaft. ² Fürsten.
³ To set up, errichten. ⁴ Definite article. ⁵ Auf der erstern. ⁶ To the
 ever favourable goddess. ^{6a} Für vier nach einander über die Pisten . . .
 davongetragene Siege. ⁷ Von entgegengesetzten Seiten. ⁸ Ungefähr. ⁹ Zur
 selben Zeit. ¹⁰ Keiner von beiden. ¹¹ Zu betrachten. ¹² The excellence of
 its workmanship, die ausgezeichnete Arbeit. ¹³ If I have, &c., so wahr
 ich Augen habe.

(I.) In the days of knight-errantry¹ and paganism, one of our old British princes² set up³ a statue to the goddess of Victory, in a point where four roads met together. In her⁴ right hand she held a spear, and her left rested upon a shield: the outside of this shield was of gold, and the inside of silver. On the former⁵ was inscribed in the old British language, "To the goddess ever favourable⁶;" and on the other, "For four victories obtained successively over the Picts^{6a} and other inhabitants of the northern islands."

It happened one day that two knights completely armed, one in black armour and the other in white, arrived from opposite parts⁷ of the country at this statue just about⁸ the same time⁹, and as neither of them¹⁰ had seen it before, they stopped to read the inscription, and to observe¹¹ the excellence of its workmanship¹².

(II.) After contemplating it for some time, "This golden shield," says (*impf.*) the black knight— "Golden shield!" cried the white knight, who was as strictly observing the opposite side, "why, if I have my eyes¹³, it is (of) silver." "I know nothing of your eyes," replied

¹⁴ Sogar. ¹⁵ Schon über. ¹⁶ The smile with which this was delivered, das Lächeln, das diese Worte begleitete. ¹⁷ The career, der Anlauf. ¹⁸ Dann stemmten sie ihre Lanzen ein, und . . . ¹⁹ A trance, eine Ohnmacht. ²⁰ Der des Begeß zog. ²¹ A sovereign balsam, eine unfehlbare Salbe. ²² Bemantert. ²³ To apply to, streichen . . . auf.

the black knight ; “but if ever I saw (*p. ind.*) a golden shield in my life, this is one.” “Yes,” returned the white knight, smiling, “it is very probable, indeed, that they should expose a shield of gold in so public a place (as this) ; for my part, I wonder even ¹⁴ that a silver one is not too strong a temptation for the devotion of some people who pass this way ; and it appears by the date, that this has been here above ¹⁵ three years.”

The black knight could not bear the smile with which this was delivered ¹⁶, and grew so warm in the dispute, that it soon ended in a challenge ; they both therefore turned their horses, and rode back so far as to have sufficient space for their career ¹⁷ ; then fixing their spears in their rests ¹⁸, they flew at each other with the greatest fury and impetuosity. Their shock was so rude, and the blow on each side so effectual, that they both fell to the ground, much wounded and bruised, and lay there for some time, as in a trance ¹⁹.

(III.) A good Druid, who was travelling that way ²⁰, found them in this condition. The Druids were the physicians of those times, as well as the priests. He had a sovereign balsam ²¹ about him, which he had composed himself, for he was very skilful ²² in all the plants which grew in the fields or in the forests ; he staunched their blood, applied his balsam to ²³ their wounds, and brought them as it were from death to life again. As soon as they

²⁴ To inquire into, um . . fragen. ²⁵ Yonder, der . . dort. ²⁶ And er behauptet. ²⁷ Had either of you, hättet ihr Beide. ²⁸ Such die Zeit genommen. ²⁹ Might have (all this passion and bloodshed) been avoided, hätte . . vermieden werden können. ³⁰ Bei. ³¹ Wohl.

were sufficiently recovered, he began to inquire into ²⁴ the occasion of their quarrel. "Why, this man," cried the black knight, "will have it that yonder ²⁵ shield is silver." "And he will have it ²⁶," replied the white knight, "that it is gold;" and then (they) told him all the particulars of the affair.

"Ah!" said the Druid with a sigh, "you are both of you, my brethren, in the right, and both of you in the wrong: had either of you ²⁷ given himself time ²⁸ to look at the opposite side of the shield, as well as that which first presented itself to view, all this passion and bloodshed might have been avoided ²⁹ *; however, there is a very good lesson to be learnt from the evils that have befallen you on ³⁰ this occasion. Permit me, therefore, to entreat you by all our gods, and by this goddess of Victory in particular, never to enter into any dispute for the future, till you have fairly ³¹ considered both sides of the question."—BEAUMONT.

* The *past participle* of können, müssen, lassen, dürfen, wollen, and mögen is never used after an *infinitive*. See HAVET and SOHRUMPF'S "German Studies," Lesson 15, "The Auxiliaries."

59. COWPER TO JOSEPH HILL.

Cowper an Joseph Hill. — ¹To make a recompense, Dank abstaten. ²Attention to my affairs, Besorgung meiner Angelegenheiten. ³Restored to perfect health, both of body and mind, körperlich und geistig vollkommen hergestellt. ⁴From which you could receive it—translate, which might procure it to you. ⁵Denkselben. ⁶To spend with, zubringen bei. ⁷Eine Wohnung. ⁸An. ⁹Uebrigens. ¹⁰Single, ledig, unverheirathet. ¹¹Mirror, Muster, u. ¹²Ergebenheit. ¹³Während. ¹⁴Nahm ich mir den meinigen.

HUNTINGDON, June 24, 1765.

DEAR JOE,—The only recompense I can make ¹you* for your kind attention to my affairs ²during my illness, is to tell you that, by the mercy of God, I am restored to perfect health, both of mind and body ³. This, I believe, will give you pleasure, and I would gladly do anything from which you could receive it ⁴.

I left St Albans on the seventeenth, and arrived that ⁵day at Cambridge, spent some time there with ⁶my brother, and came hither on the twenty-second. I have a lodging ⁷that puts me continually in mind of ⁸our summer excursions; we have had many worse, and except the size of it (which, however ⁹, is sufficient for a single ¹⁰man), but few better. I am not quite alone, having brought a servant with me from St Albans, who is the very mirror ¹¹of fidelity and affection ¹²for his master. And whereas ¹³the Turkish spy says, he kept no servant, because he would not have an enemy in his house, I hired ¹⁴mine because I would have a friend. Men do not usually bestow these encomiums on their lackeys, nor do they usually

* Du—which in *letters* must be spelled with a capital—and its corresponding possessives are to be used throughout this letter.

¹⁵ To have experience of one, einen kennen lernen. ¹⁶ Never saw his fellow, habe seinesgleichen noch nicht gesehen. ¹⁷ To forget how to spell, nicht mehr recht wissen, wie man . . . schreibt. ¹⁸ Circumstance, Anziehungspunkt. ¹⁹ In dieser Gegend. ²⁰ I believe, denk' ich. ²¹ Beinamen. ²² These being = for these are. ²³ In strict truth, wenn man bei der Wahrheit bleiben will. ²⁴ Sie gleichen sich wie die Finger einer Hand (wie ein Ei dem andern). ²⁵ Zum ersten Mal. ²⁶ Von mir grüßen. ²⁷ Deiner nächsten Umgebung. ²⁸ Sei versichert. ²⁹ Der aufrichtigen Freundschaft Deines.

deserve them ; but I have had experience of mine ¹⁵, both in sickness and in health, and never saw his fellow ¹⁶.

The river Ouse—I forget how they spell it ¹⁷—is the most agreeable circumstance ¹⁸ in this part of the world ¹⁹; at this town it is, I believe ²⁰, as wide as the Thames at Windsor ; nor does the silver Thames better deserve that epithet ²¹, nor has it more flowers upon its banks, these being ²² attributes, which, in strict truth, ²³ belong to neither. Fluellen would say, they are as like my fingers to my fingers ²⁴, and there is salmon in both. It is a noble stream to bathe (in), and I shall make that use of it three times a week, having introduced myself to it for the first time ²⁵ this morning.

I beg you will remember me to ²⁶ all my friends, which is a task that will cost you no great pains (to execute) ; particularly remember me to those of your own house ²⁷, and believe me ²⁸, your very affectionate ²⁹

WILLIAM COWPER.

60. THE LOVE OF OUR COUNTRY.

Die Liebe zum Vaterlande. — ¹ To proceed, kommen. ² To dwell, weilen. ³ To cling to . . . hängen . . . an. ⁴ Substitute, and where it. ⁵ Under the rough discipline, unter der strengen Regelung. ⁶ Bloß. ⁷ Beil. ⁸ Social affections, gesellschaftliche Verbindlichkeiten. ⁹ Verlassenste. ¹⁰ Rühmt. ¹¹ Unter. ¹² Gleichen Verhältnissen. ¹³ The fairest face of nature, die reizendsten Gegenden. ¹⁴ Alle die reizenden Vorzüge der. ¹⁵ Tropenländer (climates of the sun). ¹⁶ Einöden. ¹⁷ Daß. ¹⁸ Thou canst not bribe his soul, du kannst ihn nicht überreden. ¹⁹ When he remembers thee, wenn er deiner gedenkt.

Whence does this love of our country, this universal passion, proceed¹? Why does the eye ever dwell² with fondness upon the scenes of infant life? Why do we breathe with greater joy the breath of our youth? Why are not other soils as grateful, and other heavens as gay? Why does the soul of (art.) man ever cling to³ that earth where it first knew pleasure and pain, and⁴ under the rough discipline⁵ of the passions was roused to the dignity of moral life? Is it only⁶ that⁷ our country contains our kindred and our friends? And is it nothing but a name for our social affections⁸? It cannot be this; the most friendless⁹ (of human) being(s) has a country which he admires and extols¹⁰, and which he would, in¹¹ the same circumstances¹², prefer to all others under heaven. Tempt him with the fairest face of nature¹³, place him by living waters under the shadowy trees of Lebanon, open to his view all the gorgeous allurements¹⁴ of the climates of the sun¹⁵,—he will love the rocks and deserts¹⁶ of his childhood better than all these¹⁷, and thou canst not bribe his soul¹⁸ to forget the land of his nativity; he will sit down and weep by the waters of Babylon when he remembers thee¹⁹, O Sion!—SYDNEY SMITH.

61. PRESENCE OF MIND.

Geistesgegenwart. — ¹ Eine Rotte. ² To be, sich befinden. ³ To proceed to, sogleich . . . ⁴ Ein Banbfaften. ⁵ A person placed inside, wer innen stand. ⁶ Drunten. ⁷ Du sie gut ins Auge faßest. ⁸ Schwöre, daß du sie gesehen hast. ⁹ In the court, vor Gericht. ¹⁰ Turf. The last thing, wenn sie kommen. ¹² To struggle hard, sich tüchtig wehren. ¹³ Wurde. ¹⁴ To mark, sich merken. ¹⁵ Verurtheilt. ¹⁶ Zeugniß.

A party¹ of Whiteboys * entered a house in which were² a man, his wife, and their daughter, a little girl. The three were all together in one room. The ruffians rushed into the room, dragged the man out of the house, and there proceeded to³ murder him. In the room where the woman and the girl remained, there was a closet⁴ with a hole in its (art.) door, through which a person placed inside⁵ could see into the room. The woman concealed the little girl in the closet, and said to her, "Now, child, they are murdering your father down-stairs⁶, and when they (will) have murdered him, they will come up here and murder me. Take care that, while they are doing it, you look well at them⁷, and mind you swear to them when you see them⁸ in the court⁹. I will throw turf¹⁰ on the fire the last thing¹¹, to give you light, and struggle hard¹² that you may have time to take a good view." The little girl looked in through the hole in the closet door while her mother was being¹³ murdered; she marked¹⁴ the murderers well. She swore to them⁸ when she saw them in the court of justice, and they were convicted¹⁵ on her evidence¹⁶. —GOLDWIN SMITH'S *Irish History and Character*.

* The *Whiteboys* were insurgents, who began to create alarm in Ireland in 1762; so called from their ordinary dress being a white frock.

62. SCHILLER.—(1759-1805.)*

Schiller. — ¹ Johann Christoph Friedrich. ² Allerlei Ungemach und Wechselfälle durchzumachen. ³ To be appointed, angestellt werden. ⁴ Als Arzt. ⁵ Das . . . stand. ⁶ Seine Tendenz, Richtung. ⁷ Auf den Asperg. ⁸ Durch schnelle Flucht. ⁹ To devote one's self, sich widmen. ¹⁰ Literarischen Arbeiten. ¹¹ Drop "so." ¹² Warmer. ¹³ Ohne Frage. ¹⁴ Triebe. ¹⁵ Die man so rührend darin geschildert findet. ¹⁶ Jungfrau. ¹⁷ Denkmäler. ¹⁸ Powers as a dramatist, dramatische Befähigung.

(I.) John Christopher Frederick ¹ Schiller was born at Marbach, in Würtemberg, and died at Weimar on the 9th of May 1805. His parents being rather poor, he had to pass through manifold hardships and vicissitudes ², till at last, in 1780, he was appointed ³ surgeon ⁴ of a regiment of grenadiers stationed ⁵ at Stuttgart. In 1781 he published his first work, "The Robbers," whose motto, "*In tyrannos*," shows its tendency ⁶. The despotic Duke Charles of Würtemberg had sent the poet Schubart to the fortress of the Asperg ⁷ for his liberal opinions. Schiller escaped a similar fate by a speedy flight ⁸, 1782. From that time up to his death, Schiller devoted himself ⁹ exclusively to his literary pursuits ¹⁰. When he died, the whole German nation felt the loss, and nobody more so ¹¹ than Schiller's affectionate ¹² friend, the illustrious Goethe.

(II.) Schiller's works are unquestionably ¹³ the most popular in Germany, owing to the deep feeling and the noblest impulses ¹⁴ of the human heart so touchingly displayed in them ¹⁵. His "*Wallenstein*," "*Maid* ¹⁶ of Orleans," and "*William Tell*," are most glorious monuments ¹⁷ of the poet's great powers as a dramatist ¹⁸. The smaller poetical works of our author are so generally

* See HAVET and SCHRUMPF's "German Studies," p. 51.

²⁰ Wo immer die deutsche Zunge klingt. ²¹ To be able to quote from memory, auswendig herfagen können. ²² Bürgschaft. ²³ Eine viel umfassende Verstandesbildung. ²⁴ Fenster. ²⁵ Durch und durch.

known wherever German is spoken ²⁰, that almost everybody is able to quote from memory ²¹ passages from "*The Hostage* ²²," "*The Fight with the Dragon*," or that gem of poems, "*The Lay of the Bell*." Finally, Schiller's prose works display a vast amount of intellectual culture ²³, and are beautiful specimens ²⁴ of a style unquestionably ²⁵ elegant, pure, and classical.—A. L. BECKER.

63. THE JEW.

Der Jude. — ¹ Hindered, um . . . gebracht. ² Zur. ³ Ueber. ⁴ To thwart, verberben. ⁵ To cool, abkühlen. ⁶ Has a Jew no eyes? ⁷ Organe. ⁸ Gliedmaßen. ⁹ Gefühle und . . .

Antonio hath disgraced me, and hindered ¹ me half a * million; laughed at ² my losses, mocked at ³ my gains, scorned my nation, thwarted ⁴ my bargains, cooled ⁵ my friends, heated mine enemies; and what is his reason? I am a Jew! Hath not a Jew eyes ⁶? hath not a Jew hands, organs ⁷, dimensions ⁸, senses, affections ⁹, passions? fed †

* While in *English* we say, half a million; both the men; so great a hero; quite a nice cottage; in *German* the article always obtains the *first* place, and we must render the above phrases, eine halbe Million; die beiden (beide Männer); ein so großer Held; ein ganz nettes Häuschen.

† Say: Does not the same food feed him, &c., rendering all those past participles by the Pres. Active.

¹⁰ Wenn wir in allem Uebrigen euch gleichen . . . ¹¹ Ähnlich sein.
¹² Nach christlichem Beispiel. ¹³ Was anders als Rache? ¹⁴ Die Schurkerei,
 die ihr mich lehrt, will ich nachahmen. ¹⁵ Und schlecht müßte es gehen, wenn
 ich's nicht besser mache, als meine Lehrmeister.

with the same food, hurt with the same weapons, subject to the same diseases, healed by the same means, warmed and cooled by the same winter and summer, as a Christian is? If you prick us, do we not bleed? if you tickle us, do we not laugh? if you poison us, do we not die? and if you wrong us, shall we not revenge? If we are like you in the rest¹⁰, we will resemble¹¹ you in that. If a Jew wrong (*ind.*) a Christian, what is his humility? Revenge. If a Christian wrong a Jew, what should his sufferance be by Christian example¹²? Why, revenge¹³. The villany you teach me I will execute¹⁴; and it shall go hard but I will better the instruction¹⁵.—SHAKSPEARE, *The Merchant of Venice*, Act iii. sc. i.

64. THE JEW SHYLOCK AND BASSANIO.

A DIALOGUE.—Ein Dialog.

Der Jude Shylock und Bassanio.—¹Ducaten. ²Auf. ³To be bound for a thing, für etwas haften. ⁴Helfen. ⁵Mir das Vergnügen machen.

SHY. Three thousand ducats ,—well.

BASS. Ay, sir, for² three months.

SHY. For three months,—well.

BASS. For the which, as I told you, Antonio shall be bound³.

SHY. Antonio shall become bound³,—well.

BASS. May you stead⁴ me? Will you pleasure me⁵? Shall I know your answer?

⁶ Hastet dafür. ⁷ Any imputation to the contrary, eine Anzeige vom Gegentheil. ⁸ Wenn ich sage, er ist ein guter Mann, so meine ich. ⁹ To have you understand me = *understand me*, wohlverstanden*. ¹⁰ Dafs er mir gut ist. ¹¹ Doch hängt sein Vermögen von Zufällen ab. ¹² Eines seiner Handelschiffe fährt nach. ¹³ In. ¹⁴ Auf dem Wege nach. ¹⁵ Nur. ¹⁶ Es gibt. ¹⁷ Seeräuber. ¹⁸ Es droht Gefahr von . . . ¹⁹ Ist mir gut genug. ²⁰ Seine Bürgschaft. ²¹ Sicherlich. ²² Ich will aber auch sicher sein, ob ich's kann. ²³ Damit. ²⁴ Will ich mich bedenken.

SHY. Three thousand ducats, for three months, and Antonio bound ⁶.

BASS. Your answer to that.

SHY. Antonio is a good man.

BASS. Have you heard any imputation to the contrary ⁷?

SHY. Oh, no, no, no, no :—my meaning in saying he ⁸ is a good man is, to have you understand* me ⁹ that he is sufficient ¹⁰; yet his means are in supposition ¹¹, he hath an argosy bound to ¹² Tripolis, another to the Indies; I understand moreover upon the Rialto (m.) he hath a third at ¹³ Mexico, and a fourth for ¹⁴ England. But ships are but ¹⁵ boards, sailors but ¹⁵ men; there be ¹⁶ land-rats and water-rats, water-thieves and land-thieves; I mean, pirates ¹⁷; and then, there is the peril of ¹⁸ water, winds, and rocks. The man is notwithstanding sufficient ¹⁹;—three thousand ducats;—I think I may take his bond ²⁰.

BASS. Be assured ²¹ you may.

SHY. I will be assured I may ²²; and that ²³ I may be assured I will bethink me ²⁴. May I speak with Antonio?

* In the notes above, „wohlverstanden.“ In German the *past participle* is often employed in order to express a strong *imperative*; e.g., umgesehen! look about you! zugegriffen! fall to! nicht geplaudert! die Thüre zugemacht! don't talk! shut the door! See "German Studies," p. 107, note 3.

²⁵ Bollen. ²⁶ Schweinefleisch. ²⁷ Und so fort. ²⁸ Was gibt's Neues.

BASS. If it please you to ²⁵ dine with us.

SHY. Yes, to smell pork ²⁶. . . I will buy with you, sell with you, talk with you, walk with you, and so following ²⁷; but I will not eat with you, drink with you, nor pray with you.—What news ²⁸ on the Rialto (m.)?—
SHAKSPEARE, *The Merchant of Venice*, act i. sc. iii.

65. HUNTING IN THE MIDDLE AGES.* .

Die Jagd im Mittelalter. — ¹ Die Lieblingsunterhaltungen. ² Zur Zeit der Waffenruhe. ³ Die Beize. ⁴ Nur mäßig. ⁵ Bei. ⁶ Eine vorherrschende Neigung. ⁷ Ihr Ruhm. ⁸ Der Hauptgedanke. ⁹ Ihrer Lieder. ¹⁰ Das Hauptgeschäft. ¹¹ Die Falkenbeize (Falknerei). ¹² Vom . . . an. ¹³ Gleichfalls. ¹⁴ Beliebte. ¹⁵ The Salic code, das salische Gesetzbuch.

(I.) The favourite diversions ¹ of the middle ages (*sing.*) in the intervals of war ² were those of hunting and hawking ³. The former must in all countries be a source of pleasure; but it seems to have been enjoyed in moderation ⁴ by the Greeks and the Romans. With ⁵ the northern invaders, however, it was rather a predominant appetite ⁶ than an amusement; it was their pride and their ornament ⁷, the theme ⁸ of their songs ⁹, the object of their laws, and the business ¹⁰ of their lives (*sing.*) Falconry ¹¹, unknown as a diversion to the ancients, became from ¹² the fourth century an equally ¹³ delightful ¹⁴ occupation.

(II.) From the Salic code ¹⁵, every age would furnish testimony to the ruling passion for these two species of chase, or, as they were sometimes called, the mysteries of

* See HAVET and SCHRUMPF'S "German Studies," Lesson 76, "Hunting."

¹⁶ Ein Bindspiel, n. ¹⁷ Nur nicht. ¹⁸ The delicate sex, das zarte Geschlecht.

woods and rivers. A knight seldom stirred from his house without a falcon on his wrist, or a greyhound¹⁶ that followed him. Thus are Harold and his attendants represented in the famous tapestry of Bayeux. And in the monuments of those who died anywhere but¹⁷ on the field of battle, it is usual to find the greyhound lying at their feet, or the bird upon their wrist. Nor are the tombs of ladies without their falcon; for this diversion, being of less danger and fatigue than the chase, was shared by the delicate sex.¹⁸—H. HALLAM.

66. GULLIVER'S ADVENTURES IN BROBDIGNAG.

Gulliver's Abenteuer in Brobdignag.—¹ Pfl egte. ² Eines Tages
³ Meine Wärterin. ⁴ I must needs, mußte ich thöricht genug sein.

(I.) I should have lived happy enough in that country, if my littleness had not exposed me to several ridiculous and troublesome accidents, some of which I shall venture to relate. Glumdalclitch often carried me into the gardens of the court in my smaller box, and would¹ sometimes take me out of it, and hold me in her hand, or set me down to walk. I remember, before the dwarf left the queen, he followed us one day² into those gardens, and my nurse³ having set me down, he and I being close together, near some dwarf apple-trees, I must needs⁴ show my wit by a silly allusion between him and the trees, whereupon

⁶ To watch an opportunity, eine Gelegenheit wahrnehmen. ⁸ Mir an den Ohren vorbei fielen. ⁷ To hit, treffen. ⁸ To chance to stoop, sich zufällig bücken. ⁹ Auf eine Gasse Entfernung. ¹⁰ War so frech. ¹¹ Mit denen ich ihnen nicht nahe zu kommen wagte.

the malicious rogue, watching his opportunity ⁵ when * I was walking under one of them, shook it directly over my head, by which a dozen apples, each of them near as large as a Bristol† barrel, came tumbling about my ears⁶, one of them hit ⁷ me on the back as I chanced to stoop ⁸, and knocked me down flat on my face; but I received no other hurt, and the dwarf was pardoned at my desire, because I had given the provocation.

(II.) I cannot tell whether I were more pleased or mortified to observe in my solitary walks that the smaller birds did not appear to be at all afraid of me, but would hop about me, within a yard's distance ⁹, looking for worms and other food with as much indifference and security as if no creature at all were near them. I remember a thrush had the confidence ¹⁰ to snatch out of my hand, with his bill, a piece of cake that Glumdalclitch had just given me for my breakfast. When I attempted to catch any of these birds they would boldly turn against me, endeavouring to peck my fingers, which I durst not venture within their reach ¹¹; and then they would hop back unconcerned to hunt for worms or snails, as they did before.

* The English "when" followed by an *imperfect* or *pluperfect* is invariably rendered by „als.“ „Wenn“ answers to the English "when" with a *present* or a *future*. The former, „als," relates to particular events; while the latter, „wenn," conveys general ideas; e.g., Als Cäsar ermordet wurde, als der Feind geschlagen war. Wenn man alt ist, liebt man die Ruhe—when one is old, one loves to be quiet.

† See foot-note, page 45.

¹² A linnet, ein Hänfling. ¹³ Therewith. ¹⁴ Erholte sich, und . . .
¹⁵ Schläge. ¹⁶ Obſchon ich ihn mir ſo weit vom Leibe hielt, als ich konnte.
¹⁷ Und er mich nicht mit . . . erreichen konnte. ¹⁸ To relieve, zu Hülfe
kommen. ¹⁹ Den Hals umbrehte. ²⁰ So weit.

But one day I took a thick cudgel and threw it with all my strength so luckily at a linnet ¹², that I knocked him down, and seizing him by the neck with both my hands, ran with him ¹³ in triumph to my nurse. However, the bird, who had only been stunned, recovering himself ¹⁴, gave me so many boxes ¹⁵ with his wings on both sides of my head and body, though I held him at arm's length ¹⁶, and was out of the reach of ¹⁷ his claws, that I was twenty times thinking to let him go. But I was soon ¹⁸ relieved by one of the servants, who wrung off the bird's neck ¹⁹, and I had him next day for dinner by the queen's command. This linnet, as near as ²⁰ I can remember, seemed to be somewhat larger than an English swan.—SWIFT'S *Gulliver's Travels*.

67. VILLAGE INN SCENE.

(A DIALOGUE.)

Scene in einer Dorfschenke. — ¹ Hier herein. ² Der Wirth.
³ Nicht wahr? ⁴ Bonifaz. ⁵ Wie es allgemein heißt. ⁶ Es freut mich.

I.

BONIFACE AND AIMWELL.

BON. This way ¹, sir.

AIM. You're my landlord ², I suppose? ³

BON. Yes, sir, I'm Old Will Boniface ⁴; pretty well known upon this road, as the saying is ⁵.

AIM. O, Mr Boniface, your servant ⁶.

⁷ Was trinken Euer Gnaden? ⁸ Wie ich höre, ist . . . ⁹ Wegen. ¹⁰ Bernstein. ¹¹ Nach der alten (julianischen) Zeitrechnung. ¹² In Bezug auf. ¹³ Ein Muster von dem Bier (also „Ale," pronounced as in English). ¹⁴ Kellner. ¹⁵ To broach, anstechen, anzapfen. ¹⁶ Say "as" man . . . ¹⁷ Bei einer Mahlzeit. ¹⁸ Wenn man Ihrem Umfang nach urtheilen soll. ¹⁹ To feed upon, von . . . leben. ²⁰ Mit einer Kanne. ²¹ Zur Gesundheit! ²² Denken Sie sich es sei.

BON. O, sir! What would your honour please to drink⁷, as the saying is⁵?

AIM. I have heard⁸ your town of Lichfield much famed for⁹ ale; I think I'll taste that.

BON. Sir, I have now in my cellar, ten tuns of the best ale in Staffordshire; 'tis smooth as oil, sweet as milk, clear as amber¹⁰, and strong as brandy; and will be just fourteen years old the fifth day of next March, old style¹¹.

AIM. You're very exact, I find, in¹² the age of your ale.

BON. As punctual, sir, as I am in the age of my children; I'll show you such ale¹³.—Here, Tapster¹⁴; broach¹⁵ number 1706, as the saying is⁵. Sir, you shall taste my anno Domini. I have lived in Lichfield, man¹⁶ and boy, above eight-and-fifty years, and, I believe, have not consumed eight-and-fifty ounces of meat.

AIM. At a meal¹⁷, you mean, if one may guess by your bulk¹⁸.

BON. Not in my life, sir; I have fed purely upon¹⁹ ale; I have eaten my ale, drank my ale, and I always sleep upon my ale.

(ENTER TAPSTER WITH A TANKARD²⁰.)

Now, sir, you shall see. Your worship's health²¹!
(Drinks.) Ha! delicious! delicious! Fancy it²² Bur-

²³ Burgunder. ²⁴ Grilloß. ²⁵ It must be so, daß muß es sein. ²⁶ Bon.
²⁷ Auf Ihre. ²⁸ Wie ging das zu? ²⁹ Sie wollt' es zuweilen mit einem
 Schnäppschen qualifiziren. ³⁰ Respektabler. ³¹ Irland. ³² Whisky. ³³ War
 nachher nie mehr recht gesund. ³⁴ Alles, was sie konnte. ³⁵ Sie heilte
 meine Frau dreimal von der Trommelfucht. ³⁶ Das vierte Mal starb
 sie daran.

gundy ²³, only fancy it, and 'tis worth ten shillings a *
 quart.

AIM. (*Drinks.*) 'Tis confounded ²⁴ strong.

BON. Strong! it must be so ²⁵, or how would we be
 strong that drink it?

AIM. And you have lived so long upon ²⁶ this ale, land-
 lord?

BON. Eight-and-fifty years, upon my credit ²⁷, sir; but
 it killed my wife, poor woman, as the saying is.

AIM. How came that to pass ²⁸?

BON. I don't know how, sir. She would not let the ale
 take its natural course, sir; she was for qualifying it every
 now and then with ²⁹ a dram, as the saying is: an honest ³⁰
 gentleman that came this way from Ireland ³¹ made her a
 present of a dozen bottles of usquebaugh ³², but the poor
 woman was never well after ³³; but, however, I was
 obliged to the gentleman, you know.

AIM. Why, was it the usquebaugh that killed her?

BON. My Lady Bountiful said so. She, good lady, did
 what could be done ³⁴; she cured her of three tympanites ³⁵;
 but the fourth carried her off ³⁶; but she's happy, and I'm
 contented, as the saying is.

AIM. Who is that Lady Bountiful you mentioned?

* In German the *definite* article must be used instead of the
 English *indefinite* one, when the price of things is indicated. (See
 HAYET'S "French Class-Book," p. 249, No. 401.)

II.

¹ Odds my life, Boß Bliß! ² Hinterließ ihr eine jährliche Rente von tausend Pfund. ³ Zum Besten. ⁴ Bon. ⁵ Der was hat. ⁶ Und sich um Niemand zu kümmern braucht. ⁷ Ein Jagdliebhaber. ⁸ Ja, er ist ein Mann, der sich's wohl sein läßt. ⁹ Nach einander. ¹⁰ Und so, Sie wissen es schon, möchte man nicht. ¹¹ Ihr gehorsamster Diener.

BON. Odds my life¹, sir, we'll drink her health. (*Drinks.*) My Lady Bountiful is one of the best (of) women. Her late husband, Sir Charles Bountiful, left her worth a thousand pounds a year², and, I believe, she lays out one half on't in charitable use for the good³ of her neighbours.

AIM. Has the lady any children?

BON. Yes, sir, she has a daughter by⁴ Sir Charles; the finest woman in all our country, and the greatest fortune. She has a son, too, by her first husband, Squire Sullen, who married a fine lady from London t'other day; if you please, sir, we'll drink his health. (*Drinks.*)

AIM. What sort of man is he?

BON. Why, sir, the man's well enough; says little, thinks less, and does nothing at all, faith; but he's a man of great estate⁵, and values nobody⁶.

AIM. A sportsman⁷, I suppose?

BON. Yes, he's a man of pleasure⁸: he plays at whist, and smokes his pipe eight-and-forty hours together⁹ sometimes.

AIM. A fine sportsman, truly!—and married, you say?

BON. Ay; and to a curious woman, sir.—But he's my landlord, and so a man, you know, would not¹⁰—Sir, my humble service to you¹¹. (*Drinks.*) Though I value

¹² Obwohl ich keinen Heller um das gebe, was er mir thun kann. ¹³ Quartaltag. ¹⁴ I have a good running trade, mein Geschäft geht gut. ¹⁵ But no matter for that, aber das gehört nicht hieher. ¹⁶ Wir haben eine Masse (Gen.) ¹⁷ Daß ich wünschte, wir hätten ihrer noch so viele. ¹⁸ Verzehren. ¹⁹ Um sie zu bekommen. ²⁰ Entschädigen. ²¹ Bitte Euer Gnaden um Entschuldigung. ²² In einem Augenblick bin ich wieder zu Ihren Diensten.

not a farthing what he can do to me ¹²; I pay him his rent at quarter-day ¹³; I have a good running trade ¹⁴; I have but one daughter, and I can give her—but no matter for that ¹⁵.

AIM. You're very happy, Mr Boniface; pray, what other company have you in town?

BON. A power of ¹⁶ fine ladies; and then we have the French officers.

AIM. Oh, that's right; you have a good many of those gentlemen: pray, how do you like their company?

BON. So well, as the saying is, that I could wish we had as many more of 'em ¹⁷. They're full of money, and pay double for everything they have ¹⁸. They know, sir, that we paid good round taxes for the making of 'em ¹⁹ and so they are willing to reimburse ²⁰ us a little: one of 'em lodges in my house. (BELL RINGS.) I beg your worship's pardon ²¹; I'll wait on you in half a minute ²².—
G. FARQUHAR.

68. MARY STUART.—(1542-1587.)

Maria Stuart. — ¹ To add to, verbinden mit. ² Anmuth. ³ Ihrer Gestalt.

(I.) To ¹ all the charms of beauty, and the utmost elegance ² of external form ³, Mary added those accomplish-

⁴ Vorzüge. ⁵ Ohne Argwohn. ⁶ Widerspruch duldete sie nicht. ⁷ Von Kindheit auf. ⁸ To be no stranger to on some occasions, sich bei gegebener Gelegenheit zu verstellen wissen. ⁹ To be reckoned, gerechnet werden . . . zu. ¹⁰ Durch. ¹¹ To betray one into, einen etwas begehen lassen. ¹² To account for, erklären. ¹³ Jugendlich feurig. ¹⁴ Extrem.

ments ⁴ which render their impression irresistible. Polite, affable, insinuating, sprightly, and capable of speaking and of writing with equal ease and dignity. Sudden, however, and violent in all her attachments, because her heart was warm and unsuspecting ⁵. Impatient of contradiction ⁶, because she had been accustomed from her infancy ⁷ to be treated as a queen. No stranger ⁸, on some occasions, to dissimulation, which, in that perfidious court where she (had) received her education, was reckoned ⁹ among the necessary arts of government. Not insensible of flattery, or unconscious of that pleasure with which almost every woman beholds the influence of her own beauty. Formed with the qualities which we love, not with the talents that we admire, she was an agreeable woman rather than an illustrious queen.

(II.) The vivacity of her spirit, not sufficiently tempered with ¹⁰ sound judgment, and the warmth of her heart, which was not at all times under the restraint of discretion, betrayed her ¹¹ both into errors and into crimes. To say that she was always unfortunate will not account for ¹² that long and almost uninterrupted succession of calamities which befell her; we must likewise add that she was often imprudent. Her passion for Darnley was rash, youthful ¹³, and excessive. And though the sudden transition to the opposite extreme ¹⁴ was the natural effect of her ill-requited love, and of his ingratitude, insolence, and

¹⁵ Bewerbung. ¹⁶ Das Mitleiden wird über diesen Zug ihres Char-
acters den Mantel der Liebe werfen. ¹⁷ Bewegten. ¹⁸ Neigungen.
¹⁹ Sowohl an Größe als an Dauer. ²⁰ Jene tragischen Jammerscenen.
²¹ Für eine viel unschuldigere Person. ²² With regard to the queen's
person, was die äußere Erscheinung der Königin betrifft. ²³ A circum-
stance not to be omitted, ein Umstand, den man nicht unerwähnt lassen
darf. ²⁴ Einer Herrscherin. ²⁵ Agree in ascribing, so beschreiben alle . . .
einstimmig. ²⁶ Maria als eine Frau von . . . ²⁷ Unmuth der Formen.

brutality, yet neither these nor Bothwell's artful address ¹⁵
and important services can justify her attachment to that
nobleman.

(III.) Even the manners of the age, licentious as they
were, are no apology for this unhappy passion; nor can
they induce us to look on that tragical and infamous scene
which followed upon it with less abhorrence. Humanity
will draw a veil over this part of her character ¹⁶ which it
cannot approve, and may, perhaps, prompt ¹⁷ some to im-
pute her actions to her situation more than to her disposi-
tions ¹⁸, and to lament the unhappiness of the former
rather than accuse the perverseness of the latter. Mary's
sufferings exceed, both in degree and in duration ¹⁹, those
tragical distresses ²⁰ which fancy has feigned, to excite
sorrow and commiseration; and while we survey them, we
are apt altogether to forget her frailties; we think of her
faults with less indignation, and approve of our tears as if
they were shed for a person who had attained much nearer
to pure virtue ²¹.

(IV.) With regard to the queen's person ²², a circum-
stance not to be omitted ²³ in writing the history of a
female reign ²⁴, all contemporary authors agree in ascrib-
ing ²⁵ to Mary ²⁶ the utmost beauty of countenance and
elegance of shape ²⁷ of which the human form is capable.

²⁸ Falsche. ²⁹ Ihre Gesichtsfarbe. ³⁰ Zart. ³¹ Both as to . . . sowohl in Bezug auf . . . als. ³² Ihre hohe Gestalt gab ihr etwas Majestätisches. ³³ Grazie. ³⁴ Ihr musikalischer Geschmack war gut. ³⁵ Auf der Laute. ³⁶ Mit ungewöhnlicher Fertigkeit. ³⁷ Sie.

Her hair was black ; though, according to the fashion of that age, she frequently wore borrowed ²⁸ locks, and of different colours. Her eyes were (a) dark grey, her complexion ²⁹ was exquisitely fine, and her hands and arms remarkably delicate ³⁰, both ³¹ as to shape and colour. Her stature was of a height that rose to the majestic ³². She danced, she walked, and rode with equal grace ³³. Her taste for music was just ³⁴, and she both sung and played upon the lute ³⁵ with uncommon skill ³⁶. "No man," says Brantôme, "ever beheld her person ³⁷ without admiration and love, or will read her history without sorrow."—ROBERTSON'S *History of Scotland*.

69. PROGRESS OF TOWNS.*

Das zunehmende Wachsthum der Städte.—¹ Entstehen. ² Dicht. ³ Anfang. ⁴ Pfarrer. ⁵ Vorleser. ⁶ Küster. ⁷ Thus we account for three houses, so hätten wir schon drei Häuser. ⁸ Produces, zieht . . . herbei.

(I.) It is amusing to observe how rapidly, and from what small beginnings, towns arise ¹ in a thickly ² inhabited and enterprising country like ours. There is a church ; that is the ordinary foundation ³. Where there is a church, there must be a parson ⁴, a clerk ⁵, and a sexton ⁶. Thus we account for ⁷ three houses. An inn is required on the road ; this produces ⁸ a smith, a saddler, a butcher, and a brewer. The parson, the clerk, the sexton, the butcher,

* See HAVET and SCHRUMPF'S "German Studies," Lesson 46, "The Town."

⁸ Brauchen. ⁹ Ein Spejckreißer. ¹⁰ To contend for superiority in dress, sich's in den Kleidern zuvorthun wollen. ¹¹ Ein Accisor. ¹² To gauge, zu eichen. ¹³ Require to be taught to spell, buchstabieren lernen sollten. ¹⁴ Ein Strumpfwarenhändler. ¹⁵ Ein Leinwandhändler. ¹⁶ By degrees, nach und nach. ¹⁷ Klappern. ¹⁸ Pfefferfuchen. ¹⁹ With indignation, mit Entrüstung. ²⁰ Bei einem Glas Bier. ²¹ Das Schneiderlein. ²² Mit seinem Bügeleisen. ²³ Upon this plea, auf diesen Grund hin. ²⁴ An action is brought at the next sessions, wird eine Anklage wegen Angriff's für die nächste Gerichtsitzung eingeleitet. ²⁵ Eine gute Gelegenheit. ²⁶ Setzt die Leute an einander.

the smith, the saddler, and the brewer, require ⁸ a baker, a tailor, a shoemaker, and a carpenter. They soon learn to eat plum-pudding, and a grocer ⁹ follows. The grocer's wife and parson's wife contend for superiority in dress ¹⁰, whence flow a milliner and a mantua-maker. A barber is introduced to curl the parson's wig, and to shave the smith on Saturday nights, and a stationer to furnish the ladies with paper for their sentimental correspondence. An exciseman ¹¹ is sent to gauge ¹² the casks, and a school-master discovers that the ladies require to be taught to spell ¹³.

(II.) A hatter, a hosier ¹⁴, and a linen-draper ¹⁵ follow by degrees ¹⁶; and as children are born they begin to cry out for rattles ¹⁷ and ginger-bread ¹⁸. In the meantime a neighbouring apothecary, hearing with indignation ¹⁹ that there is a community living without physic, places three blue bottles in the window. The butcher having called the tailor bad names over a pot of ale ²⁰, Snip ²¹ knocks him down with his goose ²²; upon this plea ²³ an action for assault is brought at the next sessions ²⁴. The attorney sends over his clerk to collect evidence; the clerk, finding a good opening ²⁵, sets all the people by the ears ²⁶, becomes

²⁷ Ein Winkel Advokat. ²⁸ Acquires, bekommt. ²⁹ The mace, der Stab.
³⁰ Eigene Quartalsitzungen. ³¹ Assisen. ³² And the gallows, und einen Galgen.

a pettifogging attorney²⁷, and peace flies the village for ever. But the village becomes a town, and acquires²⁸ a bank; and should it have existed in happier days, it might have gained a corporation, a mayor, a mace²⁹, quarter-sessions of its own³⁰, the assizes³¹ and the gallows³².—Dr JOHN M'CULLOCH.

70. THE DUKE OF ALVA.—(1508-1582.)

Der Herzog von Alba. — ¹ Aller Wahrscheinlichkeit nach. ² Einseitig.
³ Blind. ⁴ Die mildere Verfahrensweise auf dem Wege der. ⁵ Ueberzeugung
 und Versöhnung. ⁶ Ein geborener. ⁷ Beweisführung. ⁸ Die mit dem Schwerte.
⁹ Kein Bevollmächtigter. ¹⁰ Could have been fitter, konnte besser
 geeignet sein. ¹¹ Impassable nature, unempfindliche Gemüthsart. ¹² Die
 trostigsten Geister. ¹³ Turn from their purposes, zur Nachgiebigkeit
 stimmen.

(I.) The truth seems to be¹, that Alva was a man of an arrogant nature, an inflexible will, and of the most narrow² and limited views. His doctrine of implicit³ obedience went as far as that of Philip himself. In enforcing it, he disdained the milder methods of⁴ argument or conciliation⁵. (It was) on force, brute force, alone (that) he relied. He was bred a⁶ soldier, early accustomed to the stern discipline of the camp. The only law he recognised was martial law; his only argument⁷ the sword⁸. No agent⁹ could have been fitter¹⁰ to execute the designs of a despotic prince. His hard impassable nature¹¹ was not to be influenced by those affections which sometimes turn the most obdurate¹² from their purposes¹³.

¹⁴ Seine Pläne. ¹⁵ In den Niederlanden. ¹⁶ Zettel. ¹⁷ To post up, anhängen. ¹⁸ Brüssel. ¹⁹ To hold light, verachten. ²⁰ Wie auch. ²¹ Und. ²² To turn, abbringen. ²³ Which he professed = which according to his profession, nach seinem Ausdruck. ²⁴ Possessive. ²⁵ Den kaum ein Zug von Menschlichkeit milderte. ²⁶ In dem unerbittlich strengen Wesen. ²⁷ Und ohne. ²⁸ Unbeugsam. ²⁹ To carry into execution, ausführen.

As little did he know of fear, nor could danger deter him from carrying out his work¹⁴.

(II.) The hatred he excited in the Netherlands¹⁵ was such that, as he was warned, it was not safe for him to go out after dark. Placards¹⁶ were posted up¹⁷ in Brussels¹⁸ menacing his life if* he persisted in his prosecution of Egmont. He held such menaces as light¹⁹ as²⁰ he did the entreaties of the countess, or²¹ the arguments of her counsel. Far from being moved by personal considerations, no power could turn²² him from that narrow path which he professed²³ to regard as the path of duty. He went surely, though it might be slowly, towards the²⁴ mark, crushing by his iron will every obstacle that lay in his track. We shudder at the contemplation of such a character, relieved† by scarcely a single touch of humanity²⁵. Yet we must admit there is something which challenges our admiration in the stern, uncompromising manner²⁶, without fear or²⁷ favour, with which a man of his indomitable²⁸ temper carries his plans into execution²⁹.—PRESCOTT'S *History of the Reign of Philip the Second*.

* *If*, *wenn*, requires the *subjunctive* of its dependent verb, when the latter is in the *imperfect* or *pluperfect*: *wenn ich hätte, if I had; wenn ich gehabt hätte, if I had had*.

† *The English past participle* must frequently, in German, be resolved into a *relative sentence*, either active or passive.

71. HISTORY.

Die Geschichte. — ¹ Einer der tüchtigsten Männer. ² To breed, hervorbringen, past indef. ³ Mit. ⁴ Being at . . . als er eines Tages an . . . stand. ⁵ Put the verb in the active voice. ⁶ From his costume, seiner Tracht nach. ⁷ To suppose to be, für . . . halten. ⁸ Of him. ⁹ Die Wache. ¹⁰ To lead away, abführen. ¹¹ Durch den Schwertstich. ¹² Von einigen Leuten. ¹³ Intim. ¹⁴ Say on him. ¹⁵ Sein Erstaunen. ¹⁶ Kaum ein wahres Wort. ¹⁷ An.

(I.) Sir Walter Raleigh, one of the most gallant worthies¹ that England ever bred², being confined in the Tower of London, there employed himself in³ the composition of the second volume of his immortal History of the World. Being⁴ at the window of his apartment, and thinking gravely of the duty of the historian, and the respect due to truth, suddenly his attention was attracted⁵ by a great noise and tumult in the court under his eyes. He saw a man strike another, whom, from his costume⁶, he supposed to be⁷ an officer, and who, drawing his sword, passed it through the body of the person⁸ who struck him; but the wounded man did not fall till he had knocked down his adversary with a stick. The guard⁹ coming up at this moment seized the officer, and led him away¹⁰, while, at the same time, the body of the man who was killed by the sword-thrust¹¹ was borne by some persons¹², who had great difficulty in penetrating the crowd which surrounded them.

(II.) Next day Raleigh received a visit from an intimate¹³ friend, to whom he related the scene which he had witnessed the preceding day, and which had made a strong impression on his mind¹⁴. What was his surprise¹⁵, however, when his friend said that there was scarcely a word of truth¹⁶ in¹⁷ any of the circumstances he had narrated;

¹⁸ Der vermeintliche. ¹⁹ Gar kein Officier. ²⁰ Der Bediente. ²¹ That it was he who, daß er. ²² The body of the dead, den Leichnam. ²³ Der Hof. ²⁴ To try, vor Gericht zu bringen. ²⁵ Are of the greatest exactitude, sind genau so, wie ich sage. ²⁶ Uns gerade gegenüber. ²⁷ Wo eine von den Fliesen höher ist als die andern. ²⁸ Gerade auf (auf demselben) dem Steine saß ich. ²⁹ Während das Ganze vor sich ging. ³⁰ The scratch, die Schramme. ³¹ To wrench out of, entwiden, Dat. (den Händen). ³² In jeder Hinsicht.

that the supposed ¹⁸ officer was no officer at all ¹⁹, but a domestic ²⁰ of a foreign ambassador; that it was he who ²¹ gave the first blow; that he did not draw his sword, but that the other had seized it and passed it through the body of the domestic before any one had time to prevent him; that at this moment a spectator among the crowd knocked down the murderer with a stick; and that some strangers bore away the body of the dead ²². He added that the court ²³ had sent an order to try ²⁴ the murderer immediately, and to show him no mercy, because the dead man was one of the principal servants of the Spanish ambassador.

(III.) "Allow me to tell you," replied Raleigh to his friend, "that I may be mistaken about the station of the murderer, but all the other circumstances are of the greatest exactitude ²⁵, because I saw every incident with (my) own eyes, and they all happened under my window in that very place opposite us ²⁶, where you may see one of the flagstones higher than the rest ²⁷." "My dear Raleigh," replied his friend, "it was on that very stone I was sitting ²⁸ when the whole ²⁹ occurred, and I received this little scratch ³⁰ that you see on my cheek in wrenching ³¹ the sword out of the hands of the murderer; and, upon my honour, you ³² have deceived yourself on all

³³ Das Manuscript. ³⁴ To reflect, nachdenken. ³⁵ Ueber. ³⁶ If I cannot assure myself of an event, wenn ich nicht einmal einer Begebenheit sicher bin. ³⁷ To happen, sich zutragen. ³⁸ Wie kann ich es wagen. ³⁹ Sich ereignet haben. ⁴⁰ To owe, schuldig sein. ⁴¹ And watched it : . . und sah ruhig zu, bis das letzte Blatt verbrannt war.

points." Sir Walter, when alone, took the manuscript ³³ of the second volume of his History, and, reflecting ³⁴ upon ³⁵ what had passed, said, "How many falsehoods must there be in my work! If I cannot assure myself of an event ³⁶ which happened ³⁷ under my own eyes, how can I venture ³⁸ to describe those which happened thousands of years before I was born, or those even which have passed ³⁹ at a distance since my birth? Truth! Truth! this is the sacrifice that I owe ⁴⁰ to thee!" Upon which he threw his manuscript, the work of years, into the fire, and watched it tranquilly consumed to the last leaf ⁴¹.—TIMBS'S *Curiosities of History*.

72. CONVERSATION BETWEEN TWO YOUNG ENGLISHMEN AT ROME.

Gespräch zwischen zwei jungen Engländern in Rom.—¹ I will suppose you, ich will den Fall setzen. ² Du studirtest (subj.) zu Rom ³ Ohne Unterbrechung. ⁴ Mit. ⁵ In. ⁶ Their manners, ihr Sitten. ⁷ And forming your own, und bildest Dein eigenes.

I will suppose you ¹ at Rome, study ² six hours uninterrupted³ with⁴ Mr Harte* every morning, and passing your evenings with ⁵ the best company of Rome, observing their manners ⁶, and forming your own ⁷; and I will suppose a number of idle, sauntering, illiterate English, as there

* Mit Herrn Harte—because the tutor lives with young Stanhope; bei would imply that young Stanhope went to Mr Harte's house.

⁸ There, daselbst. ⁹ Die stets zusammenleben. ¹⁰ I daresay, ich denke.
¹¹ Drive, eine Spazierfahrt machen. ¹² Somewhere out of town, in die
 Umgegend. ¹³ Out, dann kommen wir übermorgen. ¹⁴ To see at home,
 Besuche empfangen. ¹⁵ Und was machst du denn, bis . . . ¹⁶ Allein.

commonly is * there⁸, living entirely with one another⁹,
 supping, drinking, and sitting late at each other's lodgings.
 I will take one of these pretty fellows, and give you the
 dialogue between him and yourself, such as I daresay¹⁰ it
 will be on his side, and such as I hope it will be on yours.

ENGLISHMAN. Will you come and breakfast with me
 to-morrow? There will be four or five of our countrymen;
 we have provided chaises, and we will drive¹¹ somewhere
 out of town¹² after breakfast.

STANHOPE. I am very sorry I cannot; but I am obliged
 to be at home all morning.

E. Why, then, we will come and breakfast with you.

S. I cannot do that either; I am engaged.

E. Well, then, let it be the next day¹³.

S. To tell you the truth, it can be no day in the morn-
 ing; for I neither go out nor see anybody at home¹⁴
 before twelve.

E. And what do you do with yourself¹⁵ till twelve
 o'clock?

S. I am not by myself¹⁶; I am with Mr Harte.

E. Then what do you do with him?

* *There is, there are*, must be rendered by es gibt (gibt) whenever
 there is not a narrowly circumscribed place mentioned, and when
 no individuals are pointed out. Thus for instance: *There are*
philosophers who say, es gibt Philosophen, welche sagen; *there are no*
lions in Europe, es gibt keine Löwen in Europa. But, *there are children*
in this house, es sind Kinder im Hause; *there are the men, who*
. . . da sind die Männer, welche. . . See "German Studies," p. 57,
 note 1.

¹⁷ Nun das ist mir eine schöne Unterhaltung! ¹⁸ To take orders, in den geistlichen Stand treten. ¹⁹ Yes, my father's orders I believe I must take, mein Vater will, daß ich meine Zeit benütze (the quibble cannot be translated into German), ihm muß ich gehorchen. ²⁰ Your nurse, deinem Wärter. ²¹ And all that, und ähnlichem Zeug. ²² Ich habe ihn die ganze Woche nicht bei Gesicht gesehen. ²³ I do not care a bit, ich frage nichts darnach. ²⁴ For my own good, zu meinem Besten. ²⁵ To like to be with, gern bei . . . sein. ²⁶ Einreich. ²⁷ Will you be with us, uns Gesellschaft leisten.

S. We study different things ; we read, we converse.

E. Very pretty amusement, indeed ¹⁷ ! Are you to take orders ¹⁸, then ?

S. Yes, my father's orders I believe I must take ¹⁹.

E. And, pray, are you to obey your nurse ²⁰, too, this same—what's his name?—Mr Harte ?

S. Yes.

E. So he stuffs you all morning with Greek and Latin, and logic, and all that ²¹. I have a nurse, too ; but I never look into a book with him in my life ; I have not so much as seen the face of him this week ²², and I don't care a bit ²³ if I never see again.

S. My tutor never desires anything of me that is not reasonable, and for my own good ²⁴ ; and therefore I like to be ²⁵ with him.

E. Very sententious ²⁶ and edifying, upon my word ! At this rate you will be reckoned a " very good young man."

S. Why, that will do me no harm.

E. Will you be with us ²⁷ to-morrow (in the) evening, then ? We shall be ten with you ; and I have got some excellent wine ; and we'll be very, very merry.

S. I am very much obliged to you ; but I am en-

²⁸ Bei Cardinal Albani. ²⁹ Und dann muß (soll) ich. ³⁰ Bei der Frau des venetianischen Gesandten. ³¹ Ich kenne weder Scham noch Furcht. ³² Easy, ungezwungen. ³³ Und darum werden wir ja ins Ausland geschickt. ³⁴ Nicht wahr? ³⁵ Papa.

gaged for all the evening to-morrow,—first at Cardinal Albani's²⁸, and then to sup²⁹ at the Venetian Ambassador's³⁰.

E. How can you like being always with these foreigners? I never go amongst them, with all their formalities and ceremonies. I am never easy in company with them; and I don't know why, but I am ashamed.

S. I am neither ashamed nor afraid³¹. I am very easy³² with them; they are very easy with me. I get the language, and I see their characters by conversing with them; and that is what we are sent abroad for³³, it is not³⁴?

E. I hate your fine women's company,—your women of fashion, as they call 'em. I don't know what to say to them, for my part.

S. Have you ever conversed with them?

E. No, I never conversed with them; but I have been sometimes in their company, though much against my will.

S. But at least they have done you no hurt. Tastes are different, you know, and every man follows his own.

E. That's true; but thine's an odd one, Stanhope. All morning with the nurse, all evening in formal fine company, and all day long afraid of old daddy³⁵ in England. Thou art a queer fellow, and I am afraid there is nothing to be made of thee.

S. I am afraid so, too.

E. Well then, good night to you; you have no objec-

³⁵ To have no objection to, nichts zu etwas zu sagen haben. ³⁷ The puppy, der Welch.

tion ³⁶, I hope, to my being drunk to-night, which I certainly will be ?

S. Not in the least ; nor to your being sick to-morrow, which you as certainly will be ;—and so good night too.

You will observe that I have not put into your mouth those good arguments, which upon such an occasion would, I am sure, occur to you ; as affection toward me ; regard and friendship for Mr Harte ; respect for your own moral character, and for all the relative duties of man, son, pupil, and citizen. Such arguments would be thrown away upon such puppies ³⁷.—CHESTERFIELD to his Son.

73. THE MISER AND HIS COOK.

Der Geizhals und sein Koch. — ¹ Suchen. ² Schon mehr als. ³ Translate, what you wish. ⁴ To have no great occasion for one, einen nicht sehr vermissen. ⁵ To be starved, Hungers sterben.

[*The MISER alone. Enter JAMES.*]

MISER. Where have you been ? I have wanted ¹ (*pres.*) you above ² an hour.

JAMES. Whom do you want, sir—your coachman or your cook ? for I am both one and the other ³.

MISER. I want my cook.

JAMES. I thought, indeed, it was not your coachman ; for you have had no great occasion for him ⁴ since your last pair of horses were starved ⁵ ; but your cook, sir, shall wait upon you in an instant. [*Puts off his coachman's*

⁶ Seinen Kutscherrock. ⁷ Stehe ich zu Diensten. ⁸ Ich soll. ⁹ Nun ja.
¹⁰ Aus Mangel an Übung. ¹¹ Habe ich nicht mehr den Zug dazu. ¹² Laß.
¹³ Bist du beseffen? ¹⁴ Haben kein anderes Wort. ¹⁵ Zu. ¹⁶ Westphälischer
 Schinken. ¹⁷ Ein Lendenbraten. ¹⁸ To be had for, um . . . zu haben ist.
¹⁹ Was? warum nicht gar! will der Kerl eine Mahlzeit für den Oberbürg-
 ermeister und das ganze Rathsherrnkollegium zubereiten?

greatcoat ⁶ and *appears as a cook*.] Now, sir, I am ready for
 your commands ⁷.

MISER. I am engaged ⁸ this evening to give a supper.

JAMES. A supper, sir! I have not heard the word this
 half-year; a dinner, indeed ⁹, now and then; but for a
 supper, I am almost afraid—for want of practice ¹⁰—my
 hand is out ¹¹.

MISER. Leave off ¹² your saucy jesting, and see that you
 provide a good supper.

JAMES. That may be done with a great deal of money, sir.

MISER. Is the mischief in you ¹³?—always money! Can
 you say nothing else but money, money, money? My
 children, my servants, my relatives, can pronounce ¹⁴ no-
 thing but money.

JAMES. Well, sir; but how many will there be at ¹⁵ the
 table?

MISER. About eight or ten; but I will have a supper
 dressed but for eight; for, if there be enough for eight,
 there is enough for ten.

JAMES. Suppose, sir, at one end, a handsome soup; at
 the other a fine Westphalia ham ¹⁶ and chickens; on the
 one side a fillet of veal ¹⁷; on the other a turkey, or rather
 a bustard, which may be had for ¹⁸ about a guinea——

MISER. What! is the fellow providing an entertainment
 for my lord mayor and the court of aldermen ¹⁹?

JAMES. Then a ragout——

²⁰ Bersten machen. ²¹ See and provide, siehe zu, daß du, &c. ²² Da hast tu. ²³ Ueberfluß und Unwahl. ²⁴ Belches. ²⁵ Sie legt nicht mehr.

How the folks will talk of it, wie die Leute sich darüber aufhalten werden. ²⁷ Es freut mich stets. ²⁸ They make a jest of you, man schießt über Sie. ²⁹ To pick a quarrel, Streit anfangen.

MISER. I'll have no ragout! Would you burst ²⁰ the good people?

JAMES. Then, pray, sir, what will you (have)?

MISER. Why! see and provide ²¹ something to cloy their stomachs: let there be two good dishes of soup-maigre; a large suet pudding; some dainty fat pork-pie, very fat; a fine small lean breast of mutton; and a large dish with two artichokes. There, that is ²² plenty and variety ²³.

JAMES. Oh dear!—

MISER. Plenty and variety.

JAMES. But, sir, you must have some poultry.

MISER. No, I'll have none.

JAMES. Indeed, sir, you should have some ²⁴.

MISER. Well, then, kill the old hen; for she has done laying ²⁵.

JAMES. Mercy! sir, how the folks will talk of it ²⁶; indeed, people say enough of you already.

MISER. Eh! why, what do the people say, pray?

JAMES. Ah, sir, if I could be assured you would not be angry.

MISER. Not at all; for I am always glad ²⁷ to hear what the world says of me.

JAMES. Why, sir, since you will have it then, they make a jest of you ²⁸ everywhere,—nay, of your servants on your account. One says you pick a quarrel ²⁹ with them quarterly, in order to find an excuse to pay them no wages.

³⁰ Dummheiten! ³¹ You were taken one night, man erwischte Sie einmal des Nachts. ³² You are the byword, Sie sind zum Sprichwort geworden. ³³ Man nennt Sie nur den geizigen, flüchtigen, sparsüchtigen, alten . . . ³⁴ Paß dich.

MISER. Pooh! pooh ³⁰!

JAMES. Another says you were taken one night ³¹ stealing your own oats from your own horses.

MISER. That must be a lie; for I never allow them any.

JAMES. In a word, you are everywhere the byword ³²; and you are never mentioned but by the names of ³³ covetous, stingy, scraping, old——

MISER. Get along ³⁴, you impudent villain!

JAMES. Nay, sir, you said you would not be angry.

MISER. Get along, you * dog!"—FIELDING.

74. WASHINGTON IRVING TO MISS CATHERINE IRVING.

Washington Irving an Fräulein Katharine Irving.—
¹ Heures Käthchen. ² Sara.

MY DEAR KATE¹,—In a letter to Sarah², I gave an account of my whereabouts and whatabouts while in New

* While in modern English the form of addressing a person in conversation is *you*, in German, as is well known, there are two modes of address, *Du* and *Sie*. The first implies a certain degree of familiarity, founded upon affection and friendship, and is used by *relations* and *intimate friends*. Teachers also address their *young pupils*, and employers their *young servants*, with *Du*. In quarrels and opprobrious language, *Du* is also heard—hence above, *Du Bengel*. On the contrary, the polite mode of address is *Sie*. N.B.—The *possessive* pronouns must always be in conformity with the personal pronouns: thus, *Du* corresponds with *sein*; *ich* with *mein*, and *Sie* with *Ihr*.

³ Wo und womit ich mich in New York herumtrieb. ⁴ Beyond my intended time, länger als ich vergehakt hatte. ⁵ I was rather in a hum-drum mood, ich langweilte mich so ziemlich. ⁶ To entertain me, zu meiner Unterhaltung. ⁷ To steal back to, sich wegstehlen. ⁸ Fräulein Sonntag's. ⁹ In der „Regimentstöchter.“ ¹⁰ Herrlich. ¹¹ Say, as the next morning was bright . . . ¹² Brach ich man Lager ab. ¹³ Zu rechter Zeit für die Dampffähre. ¹⁴ Express train, Schnellzug, m. ¹⁵ To look forward to, sich auf etwas vorsehen. ¹⁶ Im Herren-Salon. ¹⁷ Whom . . . but—wen anders als. ¹⁸ Im Eisenbahnwagen setzten wir uns zusammen. ¹⁹ Verging. ²⁰ Nimmt Theil.

York ³, last week, where I was detained beyond my intended time ⁴ by a snowstorm. I was rather in a hum-drum mood ⁵ during my sojourn, and although I had big dinners, gay balls, Italian operas, and Banvard's diorama to entertain me ⁶, I would willingly have stolen back ⁷ to “my native plains,” and given up the “gay world” and all terrestrial joys. The last evening of my detention, however, the weather and my dull humour cleared up; the latter, doubtless, under the influence of Sonntag's ⁸ charms, who, in the “Daughter of the Regiment ⁹,” played and sang divinely ¹⁰.

The next morning proving bright ¹¹ and fair, I broke up my encampment ¹², and got down to the foot of Cortlandt Street, in time for the ferry-boat ¹³ which took over passengers for the express train ¹⁴. I looked forward ¹⁵ to a dull wintry journey, and laid in a stock of newspapers to while away time; but in the gentleman's cabin ¹⁶ of the ferry-boat, whom should I see but ¹⁷ Thackeray? We greeted each other cordially. He was on his way to Philadelphia, to deliver a course of lectures. We took seats beside each other in the cars ¹⁸, and the morning passed off ¹⁹ delightfully. He seems still to enjoy his visit to the United States exceedingly, and enters into ²⁰ social life with great relish.

²¹ Von dem er viel Gutes zu sagen weiß. ²² Zermalmend. ²³ To ruffle one's temper, jemandes Gemüthsruhe stören. ²⁴ Wie er mich merken ließ. ²⁵ Aus der Zeitung. ²⁶ Als es schon dunkel war. ²⁷ Ich mußte Herrn Kennedy's, oder vielmehr Herrn Gray's Haus erfragen. ²⁸ Sich was einbildet. ²⁹ Ein Seitenstück. ³⁰ Freilich. ³¹ Zugaben.

He had made a pleasant visit to Boston; seen much of Prescott—whom he speaks highly of ²¹—Ticknor, Longfellow, &c. Said the Bostonians had published a smashing ²² criticism on him; which, however, does not seem to have ruffled his temper ²³, as I understand he ²⁴ cut it out of the newspaper ²⁵, and enclosed it in a letter to a female friend in New York. I arrived, after dark ²⁶, at Baltimore.

I had to inquire my way to Mr Kennedy's, or rather Mr Gray's ²⁷, as Mr K. shares the house of his father-in-law. The door was opened by Mr Gray's old factotum and valley-de-sham * Phil, an old negro who formed a great friendship with me at Saratoga last summer, and, I am told, rather values himself on ²⁸ our intimacy. The moment he recognised me, he seized me by the hand with such exclamations of joy that he brought out old Mr Gray, and then Miss Gray, into the hall; and then a scene took place worthy of forming a companion piece ²⁹ to the return of the prodigal son. In a moment I felt myself in my paternal home, and have ever since been (*pres.*) a favoured child of the house. To be sure ³⁰, there was no fatted calf killed; but there was a glorious tea-table spread, with broiled oysters and other substantial accessories ³¹, worthy of a traveller's appetite. Here I am, delightfully fixed in this most hospitable, spacious, comfortable mansion, with

* Valet de chambre, Kammerdiener.

³² Zur Verjüngung. ³³ To attend to, zu befriedigen.

Kennedy's library and study at command ³², where I am scribbling this letter, and with my friend Phil ever at hand to take care of me, and attend to ³³ all my wants and wishes.

75. ROBINSON CRUSOE'S CLOTHES AND UMBRELLA.

Robinson's Kleider und Sonnenschirm. — ¹ To save, aufheben. ² Thiere. ³ I had them hung up, und ich ließ sie . . . hängen. ⁴ Hierdurch. ⁵ Pluperf. of werden. ⁶ Nach außen. ⁷ To shoot off the rain, um den Regen abzulassen. ⁸ A suit of clothes wholly, einen ganzen Anzug. ⁹ To make shift with, sich mit . . . zu behelfen wissen.

(I.) I have mentioned that I saved¹ the skins of all the creatures² that I killed, I mean four-footed ones, and I had * them hung up³ stretched out with sticks in the sun, by which means⁴ some of them were⁵ so dry and hard that they were fit for little, but others were very useful. The first thing that I made of these was a great cap for my head, with the hair on the outside⁶ to shoot off the rain⁷; and this I performed so well, that, after, I made me a suit of clothes wholly⁸ of the skins. I must not omit to acknowledge that they were wretchedly made; for, if I was a bad carpenter, I was a worse tailor. However, they were such as I made very good shift with⁹, and when

* When the verbs "to have" or "to get," have an *accusative* after them followed by a *past participle*, meaning to *cause a thing to be done*, they are rendered by lassen with the following verb in the *infinitive*: to have books bound, Bücher binden lassen; to get made, machen lassen (faire faire, in French).

¹⁰ To be kept very dry, ganz trocken bleiben. ¹¹ To spend time and pains, sich Zeit und Mühe kosten lassen. ¹² To be in great want of a thing, einer Sache sehr bedürftig sein. ¹³ In Brazilien. ¹⁴ Sing. ¹⁵ Every jot as great here, hier nicht minder. ¹⁶ The equinox, die Tag- und Nachtgleiche. ¹⁷ In Brazilien. ¹⁸ Sonnenschein, m. ¹⁹ To take a world of pains with a thing, sich unendlich viele Mühe mit einer Sache geben—translate, therewith. ²⁰ It was a great while before, es dauerte lange bis. ²¹ Something, das den Anschein hatte, brauchbar zu sein. ²² Nay, ja. ²³ To hit the way, das Rechte finden. ²⁴ A thing is to my mind, eine Sache gefällt mir. ²⁵ Brought ich einen zu Stande. ²⁶ To answer indifferently well, leidlich taugen. ²⁷ To make an umbrella let down, einen Schirm so machen, daß man ihn einziehen kann.

I was out, if it happened to rain, the hair of my waistcoat and cap being outermost, I was kept very dry¹⁰.

(II.) After this I spent¹¹ a great deal of time and pains to make an umbrella; I was indeed in great want of one¹², and had a great mind to make one. I had seen them made* in the Brazils¹³, where they are very useful in the great heats¹⁴ there, and I felt the heats (*sing.*) every jot as great here¹⁵, and greater too, being nearer the equinox¹⁶; besides, as I was obliged to be much abroad¹⁷, it was (a) most useful (thing) to me, as well for the rains (*sing.*) as the heats¹⁸. I took a world of pains with it¹⁹, and was a great while before²⁰ I could make anything likely to hold²¹: nay²², after I thought I had hit the way²³, I spoiled two or three before I made one to my mind²⁴; but at last I made²⁵ one that answered indifferently well²⁶; the main difficulty, I found, was to make it let down²⁷. I could make it spread, but if it did not

* The verb *sehen*, when used in phrases similar to the above, simply takes the *infinitive present of the active voice* before it, instead of the English *past participle*, besides remaining itself in the *infinitive*. I had seen them made, ich hatte sie machen sehen. See foot-note, p. 81. See also "German Studies," Lesson 15.

²⁸ Es gelang mir, ihn so zu machen, daß ich ihn aufspannen konnte; aber dann konnte ich ihn nicht abspannen und einziehen. ²⁹ Translate, I could only carry it over my head. ³⁰ Und das ging nicht. ³¹ Ein Schirmdach. ³² To keep off the sun, vor der Sonne schützen. ³³ To have no need of a thing, eine Sache nicht brauchen.

let down too, and draw in ²⁸, it was not portable for me any way but just over my head ²⁹, which would not do ³⁰. However, at last, as I said, I made one to answer ²⁶, and covered it with skins, the hair upwards, so that it cast off the rain like a pent-house ³¹, and kept off the sun ³² so effectually that I could walk out in the hottest of (the) weather, and when I had no need of it ³³, could close it, and carry it under my arm.—DE FOE'S *Robinson Crusoe*.

76. THE COUNTRY INN.

Die Landherberge. — ¹ In the honour = to have the honour. ² Berthen. ³ Bequemlichkeit. ⁴ Ein bloßer Junge.

ACT I. SCENE 2.—LADY GOODBODY, MISS MARTIN, MISS HANNAH CLODFATE, SIR JOHN HAZELWOOD, WORSHIPTON.

Enter SIR JOHN HAZELWOOD.

SIR JOHN. I am happy in the honour ¹ of seeing your ladyship and these fair ² ladies.

LADY GOOD. And we reckon ourselves particularly fortunate in meeting with you, Sir John; you are very good indeed to give up so much of your accommodation ³ to poor storm-bound travellers. Allow me to present my nieces to you. (*After presenting her nieces.*) It is a long time since we met, Sir John; you were then a mere lad ⁴, and I was not myself a very old woman.

⁵ I don't care to say how long it is ago, *ich will nicht sagen, wie lang es schon her ist.* ⁶ Ich hoffe, es geht ihm gut. ⁷ Es geht ihm recht gut. ⁸ Sehr früh. ⁹ To be about to, gerade wollen. ¹⁰ Aufopferung. ¹¹ To stare at, anstarren. ¹² You will admit of this plea for being better acquainted, Sie werden das als hinreichenden Grund für eine nähere Bekanntschaft gelten lassen.

SIR JOHN. I remember perfectly the last time I had the pleasure of seeing your ladyship, though, being a bachelor still, I don't care to say how long it is ago ⁵. Your brother, Sir Rowland, was with you then; I hope he is well ⁶.

LADY GOOD. He is very well ⁷; I ought to have introduced his daughter to you particularly. (SIR JOHN *going up to* MISS MARTIN.) No, no! this (*pointing to* HANNAH) is my brother Rowland's daughter. She is somewhat like her mother who died, as you know, at a very early age ⁸, leaving him but this child.

(WORSHIPTON, *who is about to* ⁹ *present with much devotion* ¹⁰ a glove to MISS MARTIN, *which she has dropped, lets it fall out of his hand, and retiring some paces, stares with astonishment at* ¹¹ HANNAH.)

SIR JOHN (*to* HANNAH.) I am happy of having this opportunity of paying my respects to the daughter of my old friend. I hope, madam, you will admit of this plea for being better acquainted ¹².

LADY GOOD. (*aside to* HANNAH.) Answer him, child.

HANNAH (*curtseying awkwardly.*) My father is very well, I thank you, sir.

MISS MARTIN (*looking slyly at* Worshipton.) I fancy, after all, I must pick up this glove myself. I am afraid some sudden indisposition——

WOR. (*confusedly.*) I beg pardon! I—I have a slight pain in my jawbone; I believe it is the toothache.

¹³ So schlimm. ¹⁴ Zu meinem und meiner Freunde Besten. ¹⁵ Dagegen.
¹⁶ To press one, in einen bringen. ¹⁷ Daß. ¹⁸ To defend one's self,
 sich sträuben. ¹⁹ Wirklich denn. ²⁰ Bei Seite.

LADY GOOD. The toothache ! how I pity you ! there is no pain in the world so bad ¹³. But I have a cure for it that I always carry in my pocket for the good of myself ¹⁴ and my friends : do swallow some drops of it ; it will cure you presently (*offering him a phial.*)

WOR. (*retreating from her.*) You are infinitely obliging, madam, but I never take anything for it ¹⁵.

LADY GOOD. (*following him with a phial.*) Do * take it, and hold it in your mouth before you swallow it. It is very nauseous, but it will cure you.

WOR. (*still retreating.*) Pray † madam, be so obliging as to excuse me ; I cannot possibly swallow the potion.

LADY GOOD. (*pressing* ¹⁶ *him still more earnestly.*) Indeed, indeed, it will cure you, and I must positively insist upon ¹⁷ your taking it.

WOR. (*defending* ¹⁸ *himself vehemently.*) Positively ¹⁹, madam, you oblige me to say—(*breaking suddenly away.*) Pest take all the drugs in the world ! (*aside* ²⁰.)

SIR JOHN. You must not, Lady Goodbody, insist on curing a man against his will ; he likes the pain, perhaps, let him enjoy it.

WOR. (*returning.*) Indeed, I am very much obliged to your ladyship ; I am much better now. Forgive my impatience ; I don't know what I said.

* The English emphatic imperative "do," etc., as above in "do take it," is in German rendered by "nur" or "doch," following the usual imperative form ; e.g., nehmen Sie es nur ; kommen Sie doch, do come.

† Pray, Bitte, the I is left out, as in English.

²¹ To have faith in, Vertrauen auf etwas haben. ²² Heut zu Tage.
²³ Gesellschafterin. ²⁴ But that, daß nicht. ²⁵ Daß ich das nicht leiden kann.
²⁶ Die Größe. ²⁷ Ich habe stets viel auf Lady Goodbody's Ansichten gehalten.

LADY GOOD. I am very glad you are better, and I forgive you with all my heart, though it is a remedy that I have long had the greatest faith in ²¹, distilled by myself from the very best ingredients, and has cured a great many people, I assure you. (*To SIR JOHN.*)—So you took this lady for Sir Rowland's daughter—(*pointing to Miss MARTIN.*) Do you see no traces in her countenance of my sister and Colonel Martin? She lost both her parents early, and she has been ever since my child.

SIR JOHN. You are happy in having such a daughter.

LADY GOOD. I am so ; she is a very good girl, and has many excellent qualities, which young women nowadays ²² do but rarely possess.

SIR JOHN. I daresay she is a most amiable companion ²³, whom you would be very unwilling to part with.

LADY GOOD. Nay, Sir John, I am not so selfish, but that ²⁴ I should willingly give her up to a good husband.

MISS MARTIN (*aside to LADY GOODBODY.*) Ah! ma'am, why will you do this? You know I can't bear it ²⁵. (*Aloud to SIR JOHN.*) You must not trust Lady Goodbody's account of me ; for if she thought size ²⁶ necessary to make a woman perfect, it would be difficult to persuade her that I am not six feet high.

SIR JOHN. Excuse me, ma'am, I have always trusted to Lady Goodbody's opinions ²⁷, and have never felt more inclination to do so than at this moment.

LADY GOOD. She always behaves like a fool when she

²⁸ Und mit dieser einzigen Ausnahme. ²⁹ Hätte. ³⁰ Darf ich die Ehre haben?

is praised, and excepting this ²⁸, I don't know a fault that she has ²⁹.

(Enter a servant announcing dinner.)

(To MISS MARTIN.) Go before, my dear, and place my chair as you know I like it.

(Exit MISS MARTIN, followed by SIR JOHN leading out LADY GOODBODY.)

WOR. *(looking askance at HANNAH, and then going up to her with an unwilling shrug.)* Permit me to have the honour ³⁰. *(Exeunt.)*—JOANNA BAILLIE.

77. CHARACTER OF WILLIAM III.

Charakter Wilhelms des Dritten. — ¹ Großbritannien. ² Dänien.
³ Had brown hair. ⁴ And of a clear and delicate complexion, und war von blasser, zarter Gesichtsfarbe. ⁵ Composed to, . . . das Ernst und Würde ausdrückte. ⁶ Fein. ⁷ Engbrüstig. ⁸ Die Ueberbleibsel (pl.)

Thus lived and died William III., King of Great Britain¹ and Prince of Orange². He had a thin and weak body, was brown-haired³, and of a clear and delicate complexion⁴. He had a Roman eagle nose, bright and sparkling eyes, a large front, and a countenance composed⁵ to gravity and authority. All his senses were critical⁶ and exquisite. He was always asthmatical⁷, and the dregs⁸ of the small-

⁹ Der Blattern. ¹⁰ Nur. ¹¹ Most commonly, meistens. ¹² Mit wirbriger Kälte. ¹³ And this was. ¹⁴ In einem Schiachttage. ¹⁵ Equally well, mit gleicher Fertigkeit. ¹⁶ Das Lateinische, Spanische und Italienische. ¹⁷ That amazed all about him, daß seine ganze Umgebung in Erstaunen setzte. ¹⁸ In a true discerning, in einer richtigen Unterscheidungsgabe. ¹⁹ Seine Pläne.

pox ⁹ falling * on his lungs, he had a constant deep cough. His behaviour was solemn and serious, seldom cheerful, and but ¹⁰ with a few. He spoke little, and very slowly, and most commonly ¹¹ with a disgusting dryness ¹², which ¹³ was his character at all times, except in a day of battle ¹⁴; for then he was all fire, though without passion; he was then everywhere, and looked to everything. He spoke Dutch, French, English, and German, equally well ¹⁵, and understood the Latin, Spanish, and Italian ¹⁶; so that he was well fitted to command armies composed of several nations. He had a memory that amazed all about him ¹⁷, for it never failed him. He was an exact observer of men and things. His strength lay rather in a true discerning ¹⁸ and a sound judgment, than in imagination or invention. His designs ¹⁹ were great and good.—BURNET.

* Use the conjunction *weil* or *da*. When in English the present participle is used by itself, *i.e.*, without a preposition, to denote *cause, reason, or time*, as in Latin or French, it must always be replaced by the corresponding *conjunction* with the finite verb; *e.g.*, this *being* the case, *da* *hieß* der Fall war; my father *being* ill, *weil* mein Vater krank ist. Translate here, *weil* ihm die Ueberbleibsel der Blattern auf die Lunge geschlagen hatten.

78. FREDERICK THE GREAT.*

Friedrich der Große. — ¹ After his accession . . . nachdem er im Jahre . . . den Thron Preussens bestiegen hatte. ² To apply one's self, sich widmen. ³ Public business, die Staatsgeschäfte. ^{3a} Freilich. ⁴ To exercise superintendence, Aufsicht führen. ⁵ Zweige. ⁶ To be. ⁷ Zur. ⁸ Um ihrer selbst willen. ⁹ To intermeddle, sich einzumischen. ¹⁰ To make felt, fühlen zu lassen. ¹¹ Fellow-creatures, Mitmenschen. ¹² Abgeneigt. ¹³ To ask, um . . . fragen. ¹⁴ To delegate ample powers, weitgehende Vollmachten zu übertragen. ¹⁵ Schreiber. ¹⁶ Schatzmeister. ¹⁷ Oberfeldherr. ¹⁸ Handels- und Justizminister. ¹⁹ For . . . wie auch der der innern und äußern Angelegenheiten. ²⁰ Stallmeister.

(I.) Frederick the Great, son of Frederick William, was born on the 24th of January 1712. After his accession to the throne of Prussia in 1740 ¹, he applied himself ² to public business ³ after a fashion unknown among kings. Louis XIV., indeed ^{3a}, had been his own Prime Minister, and had exercised ⁴ a general superintendence over all the departments ⁵ of the government, but this was not sufficient for Frederick. He was not content with being ⁶ his own Prime Minister, he would be his own sole minister. A love of ⁷ labour for its own sake ⁸, a restless and insatiable longing to dictate, to intermeddle ⁹, to make his power felt ¹⁰, a profound scorn and a great distrust of his fellow-creatures ¹¹, made him unwilling ¹² to ask ¹³ counsel, to confide important secrets, to delegate ample powers ¹⁴.

(II.) The highest functionaries under Frederick's government were mere clerks ¹⁵, and were not so much trusted by him as valuable clerks are often trusted by the heads of departments. He was his own Treasurer ¹⁶, his own Commander-in-chief ¹⁷, his own Intendent of Public Works, his own Minister for Trade and Justice ¹⁸, for Home Affairs and Foreign Affairs ¹⁹, his own Master of the Horse ²⁰,

* See HAVET and SCHRUMPF'S "German Studies," pp. 16 and 17, Friedrich der Große."

²¹ Haus Hofmeister und Kammerherr. ²² Oberbeamter. ²³ Müßte er.
²⁴ Durch einen königlichen Eundboten. ²⁵ By one's own hand, - eigen-
händig. ²⁶ Save, neben. ²⁷ Verlangte. ²⁸ Uebertragen. ²⁹ Abschreiben.
³⁰ His scrawls, sein Gefrigel. ³¹ Bündiges. ³² Amtliche. ³³ Kopier-
maschine. ³⁴ Steindruckpresse. ³⁵ Kabinettssekretär. ³⁶ Der Art. ³⁷ Residenz.
³⁸ Durch den letzten Eilboten. ³⁹ Prüfte. ⁴⁰ Mit scharfem Auge. ⁴¹ Free
from, ohne. ⁴² That some fraud might be practised on him, es
möchte ihm ein Streich gespielt werden.

Steward and Chamberlain²¹. Matters of which no chief
of an office²² in any other government would ever hear,
were, in this singular monarchy, decided by the king in
person. If a traveller wished for a good place to see a
review, he had to²³ write to Frederick, and received next
day, from a royal messenger²⁴, Frederick's answer, signed by
Frederick's own hand²⁵. The king could tolerate no will,
no reason, in the state, save²⁶ his own. He wished for²⁷
no nobler assistance than that of penmen who had just
understanding enough to translate²⁸ and transcribe²⁹, to
make out his scrawls³⁰, and to put his concise³¹ "Yes,"
and "No" into an official³² form. Of the higher intel-
lectual faculties, there is as much in a copying machine³³
or a lithographic press³⁴ as he required from a secretary
of the cabinet³⁵.

(III.) His own exertions were such³⁶ as were hardly to
be expected from a human body or a human mind. At Pots-
dam, his ordinary residence³⁷, he rose at three in summer
and four in winter. A page soon appeared, with a huge
basket full of all the letters which had arrived for the
king by the last courier³⁸. He examined³⁹ the seals with
a keen eye⁴⁰, for he was never for a moment free from⁴¹
the suspicion that some fraud might be practised on him⁴².
Then he read the letters, divided them into several

¹ To signify one's pleasure, seinen Willen zu erkennen geben. ² Some cutting epigram, beißende Spottverse. ³ Un. ⁴ Seines Tagewerks. ⁵ To be in attendance, seine Aufwartung machen. ⁶ Naßm die Tagesbefehle in Bezug auf alle . . . entgegen. ⁷ To review, mustern. ⁸ Seine Gardetruppen. ⁹ Genau. ¹⁰ Exerciermeister. ¹¹ In the meantime, unterdessen. ¹² To be employed, beschäftigt sein. ¹³ Mit der Beantwortung der . . . ¹⁴ At random, auf's Gerathewohl. ¹⁵ Sah nach, ob. ¹⁶ Rede- und Schreibfreiheit. ¹⁷ Confident in, im Vertrauen auf. ¹⁸ Unzufriedene und Schmähler.

packets, and signified his pleasure ¹, generally by a mark, often by two or three words, now and then by some cutting epigram ². By ³ eight he had generally finished this part of his task ⁴. The adjutant-general was then in attendance ⁵, and received instructions for the day ⁶ as to all the military arrangements of the kingdom. Then the king went to * review ⁷ his guards ⁸, not as kings ordinarily review their guards, but with the minute ⁹ attention and severity of an old drill-sergeant ¹⁰. In the meantime ¹¹ the four cabinet secretaries had been employed ¹² in answering ¹³ the letters on which the king had signified his will. Frederic, always on his guard against treachery, took from the heap a handful of letters at random ¹⁴, and looked into them to see ¹⁵ whether his instructions had been exactly followed.

(IV.) Order was strictly maintained throughout Frederic's dominions. Property was secure. A great liberty of speaking and writing ¹⁶ was allowed. Confident in ¹⁷ the irresistible strength derived from a great army, the king looked down on malcontents and libellers ¹⁸ with (a) wise disdain, and gave little encouragement to spies and in-

* *Went to*, the infinitive *without* zu is used before and after the verbs *gehen*, *reiten*, *fahren*; e.g., *spazieren gehen*; *ich ging spazieren*.

¹⁹ Und gab Spionen und Angebern . . . ²⁰ Wenn man ihm . . . ²¹ Bloß.
²² Einen Volkshaufen. ²³ Hinzu. ²⁴ Eine Schmähschrift. ²⁵ Weiter unten
anzubringen. ²⁶ See page 45. ²⁷ Ein Exemplar. ²⁸ A stinging lampoon,
eine schneidende Spottschrift. ²⁹ Voltaire's Memoiren (pron. Memoaren).
³⁰ Herausgegeben. ³¹ Um. ³² In an offensive manner, in beleidigender
Weise. ³³ It will pay you well, Sie werden damit ein gutes Geschäft
machen. ³⁴ Die Zügellosigkeit. ³⁵ Geistesstärke. ³⁶ Not common, un-
gewöhnlich. ³⁷ Man ist es schuldig. ³⁸ Rechtspflege. ³⁹ Herrscher.

formers¹⁹. When he was told²⁰ of the disaffection of one of his subjects, he merely²¹ asked, "How many thousand men can he bring into the field?" He once saw a crowd²² staring at something on a wall. He rode up²³, and found that the object of curiosity was a scurrilous placard²⁴ against himself. The placard had been posted up so high that it was not easy to read it. Frederick ordered his attendants to take it down and put it lower²⁵. "My people and I," said he, "have come to an agreement which satisfies us both. They (are to) say what they please, and I (am to) do what I please." A Berlin²⁶ bookseller sent to the palace a copy²⁷ of the most stinging lampoon²⁸, that perhaps ever was written in the world, the "Memoirs of Voltaire²⁹," published³⁰ by Beaumarchais, and asked for³¹ his majesty's orders. "Do not advertise it in an offensive manner³²," said the king, "but sell it by all means. I hope it will pay you well³³." Even among statesmen accustomed to the license of³⁴ a free press, such steadfastness of mind³⁵ as this is not common³⁶.

(V.) It is due to³⁷ the memory of Frederick to say, that he earnestly laboured to secure to his subjects the great blessing of a cheap and speedy justice³⁸. He was one of the first rulers³⁹ who abolished the cruel and absurd prac-

⁴⁰ Den . . . Gebrauch der Folter. ⁴¹ Todesurtheil. ⁴² Religious persecution, Verfolgung um des Glaubens willen. ⁴³ Unerhört (last).

tice of torture ⁴⁰. No sentence of death ⁴¹ pronounced (*rel.*) by the ordinary tribunals was executed without Frederick's sanction, and his sanction, except in cases of murder, was rarely given. Religious persecution ⁴² was unknown under ⁴³ Frederick's government.—LORD MACAULAY.

79. GOETHE'S BIRTH AND EARLY YOUTH.*

Goethe's Geburt und Kindheit.—¹ Schlägen. ² Frankfurt am Main. ³ Wie man sich denken kann. ⁴ To be heedless of, auf etwas nicht achten. ⁵ In dem niedern Zimmer mit schweren Querbalken im Großen Hirschgraben. ⁶ Ein neugeborenes Knäblein. ⁷ Where . . . with an agonising anxiety, wo man mit quälender Angst ein fast . . . beobachtete. ⁸ What we conceive, was wir uns unter . . . denken. ⁹ Die wir uns lebendiger vergegenwärtigen.

(I.) Johann Wolfgang Goethe was born on the 28th August 1749, as the clock sounded ¹ the hour of noon in the busy town of Frankfort-on-the-Maine ². The busy town, as may be supposed ³, was quite heedless of ⁴ what was then passing in the corner of that low, heavy-beamed room, in the *Grosse Hirsch-graben* ⁵, where an infant ⁶, almost lifeless, was watched with agonising anxiety ⁷—an anxiety dissolving into tears of joy, as the aged grandmother exclaimed to the pale mother, “He lives!”

Goethe's father was a cold, stern, somewhat pedantic, but truth-loving, upright-minded man. The mother was more like what we conceive ⁸ as the proper parent for a poet. She is one of the pleasantest figures in German literature, and one standing out with greater vividness ⁹

* See HAVET and SCHRUMPF'S “German Studies,” pp. 30 and 31, „Aus Goethe's Kindheit.“

¹⁰ Mächte sie allgemein beliebt. ¹¹ Unternehmung. ¹² Ueber der Einfahrt.
¹³ Wie jeder Zeichendeuter bestätigen wird. ¹⁴ Im Urtexte. ¹⁵ Der ewige
 Jude. ¹⁶ Die vier Söhnefinder. ¹⁷ To transmit to, vererben auf.
¹⁸ Zum Geschichtenerzählen. ¹⁹ Die Blättern. ²⁰ To carry off, wegraffen.
²¹ Zur Verwunderung. ²² Hattest du denn dein Brüderchen nicht lieb?
²³ Dafs dir sein Verlust nicht wehe thut? ²⁴ Unter dem Bette hervor. ²⁵ Einen
 Stoß Papiere.

than almost any other. Her simple, hearty, joyous, and affectionate nature endeared her to all ¹⁰. She was the delight of children, the favourite of poets and princes. After a lengthened interview ¹¹ with her, an enthusiast exclaimed, "Now do I understand how Goethe has become the man he is."

(II.) Over the doorway ¹² of the house in which he was born were a lyre and a star, announcing, as every interpreter will certify ¹³, that a poet was to make that house illustrious. The poetic faculty early manifested itself. He had read the "Orbis Pictus," Ovid's "Metamorphoses," Homer's "Iliad" in prose, Virgil in the original ¹⁴, "Telemachus," "Robinson Crusoe," "Anson's Voyages," with such books as "Fortunatus," "The Wandering Jew ¹⁵," "The Four Sons of Aymon ¹⁶," &c. He had also read and learned by heart most of the poets of that day. Goethe's mother had transmitted to ¹⁷ him her love of story-telling ¹⁸; not only did he tell stories, he wrote them also. When the small-pox ¹⁹ had carried off ²⁰ his little brother, to the surprise ²¹ of his mother, Wolfgang shed no tears, believing Jacob to be with God in heaven. "Did you not love your little brother, then ²²," asked the mother, "that you do not grieve for his loss ²³?" Wolfgang ran to his room, and from under the bed ²⁴ drew a quantity of papers ²⁵ on which he had written stories and lessons. "All these I had written that I might teach them

²⁶ Damals. ²⁷ Wir können noch beifügen. ²⁸ Seiner Frühreife.

to him," said the child. He was then ²⁶ nine years old. It may be added ²⁷, as a further proof of his precocity ²⁸, that before he had reached his eighth year he wrote German, French, Italian, Latin, and Greek.—LEWES'S *Story of Goethe's Life*.

80. GOETHE AND SCHILLER.*

Goethe und Schiller. — ¹ Unter all dem Tribut, den ein begeistertes Volk der Größe Schiller's zollt. ² Ist vielleicht kaum einer zarter und wichtiger. ³ Nebenbuhler. ⁴ Heerlager. ⁵ Erstrebungen. ⁶ Man brauchte nur . . . um. ⁷ Mit einem Blicke. ⁸ Der in die Zukunft schaut.

(I.) Of all the tributes to Schiller's greatness which an enthusiastic people has pronounced¹, there is perhaps nothing which carries a greater weight of tenderness and authority² than Goethe's noble praise. There are, indeed, few nobler spectacles than the friendship of two great men. Rivals³ Goethe and Schiller were and are; natures in many respects directly antagonistic; chiefs of opposing camps⁴, and brought into brotherly union only by what was highest in their natures and their aims⁵. To look⁶ on these great rivals was to see at once⁷ their great dissimilarity. Goethe's beautiful head had the calm, victorious grandeur of the Greek ideal; Schiller's, the earnest beauty of a Christian looking towards the future⁸.

(II.) At the time that these two men seemed most opposed to each other, and *were* opposed in feeling, they were gradually drawing closer and closer in the very lines

* See HAVET and SCHRUMPF'S "German Studies," pp. 26 and 51.

⁹ In der Art ihrer Entwicklung (development). ¹⁰ Stores, Schätze.
¹¹ Mitgefühl und Antrieb. ¹² Den ihn ganz für sich in Anspruch nehmenden
wissenschaftlichen Studien. ¹³ Zurückführen auf. ¹⁴ Drängen. ¹⁵ In Bruch-
stücken. ¹⁶ Muster.

of their development⁹, and a firm basis was prepared for solid and enduring union. Goethe was five-and-forty, Schiller* five-and-thirty. Goethe had much to give, which Schiller gratefully accepted; and if he could not in return influence the developed mind of his great friend, nor add to the vast stores¹⁰ of its knowledge and experience, he could give him that which was even more valuable, *sympathy* and *impulse*¹¹. He withdrew him from the engrossing pursuit of science¹², and restored¹³ him once more to poetry. He urged¹⁴ him to finish what was already commenced, and not to leave his works in fragments¹⁵. They worked together with the same purpose and with the same earnestness, and their union is the most glorious episode in the lives of both, and remains an eternal exemplar¹⁶ of noble friendship.—LEWES'S *Story of Goethe's Life*.

* See HAVET and SCHRUMPF'S "German Studies," page 51.

81. HOW THE SPIDER MAKES ITS WEB.

Wie die Spinne ihr Gewebe macht. — ¹ Glutinous, klebrig.
² To choose, wollen. ³ Anzuheften. ⁴ To emit, spritzen. ⁵ Begin a new sentence. ⁶ Dazu dient. ⁷ To recede, sich entfernen. ⁸ To lengthen, sich verlängern. ⁹ Angebracht werden soll. ¹⁰ To gather up, aufnehmen.
¹¹ Claws, Fangwerkzeuge. ¹² Zu schlaff. ¹³ It, das Thierchen. ¹⁴ In gleicher Richtung laufende Fäden. ¹⁵ So zu sagen. ¹⁶ Der (Weber) Zettel.
¹⁷ Der Einschlag. ¹⁸ In die Quere. ¹⁹ To fix, anknüpfen. ²⁰ An. ²¹ Leimig.
²² Bleiben aneinander kleben. ²³ To happen to touch, sich berühren.
²⁴ Most exposed to be torn, die am leichtesten zerrissen werden könnten.

Nature has furnished the body of this little creature with a glutinous ¹ liquid, which it spins into thread, coarser or finer, as it chooses ². In order to fix ³ its thread, when it begins to weave, it emits ⁴ a small drop of its liquid against the wall, which, hardening ⁵ by degrees, serves ⁶ to hold the thread very firmly; then receding ⁷ from the first point, as it recedes the thread lengthens ⁸; and when the spider has come to the place where the other end of the thread should be fixed ⁹, gathering up ¹⁰ with its claws ¹¹ the thread which would otherwise be too slack ¹², it is stretched (*act.*) tightly, and fixed in the same manner to the wall as before. In this manner it ¹³ spins and fixes several threads parallel to each other ¹⁴, which, so to speak ¹⁵, serve as the warp ¹⁶ to the intended web. To form the woof ¹⁷, it spins in the same manner its thread, transversely ¹⁸ fixing ¹⁹ one end to the first thread that was spun (and) which is always the strongest of the whole web, and the other to ²⁰ the wall. All these threads being newly spun, are glutinous ²¹, and therefore stick to each other ²² wherever they happen to touch ²³; and, in those parts of the web most exposed to be torn ²⁴, our natural

²⁵ Unsere geborene Künstlerin. ²⁶ Dadurch daß . . . ²⁷ To double, zwirnen.

artist ²⁵ strengthens them by ²⁶ doubling ²⁷ the threads sometimes six-fold.—GOLDSMITH.

82. ROBINSON CRUSOE'S FIRST ALARM.

Robinson's erster Schreck. — ¹ Eines Tages, als . . . ² Spur, f. ³ Ganz deutlich. ⁴ Wie vom Donner gerührt. ⁵ Eine Anhöhe. ⁶ Um mich weiter umzusehen. ⁷ Dem Ufer entlang. ⁸ Verwirrend. ⁹ Einfriedung, f. ¹⁰ Ich fühlte, wie man zu sagen pflegt, kaum den Boden unter den Füßen. ¹¹ To the last degree, äußerst. ¹² To fancy, halten . . . für.

It happened one day ¹ about noon, going towards my boat, I was exceedingly surprised with the print ² of a man's naked foot on the shore, which was very plain ³ to be seen in the sand. I stood like one thunderstruck ⁴, or as if I had seen an apparition; I listened, I looked round me, I could hear nothing, nor see anything. I went up to a rising ground ⁵ to look farther ⁶; I went up the shore ⁷, but it was all one; I went to it again to see if there were any more, and to observe if it might not be my fancy; but there was no room for that, for there was exactly the very print of a foot, toes, heel, and every part of a foot: how it came thither I knew not, nor could in the least imagine. But after innumerable fluttering ⁸ thoughts, like a man perfectly confused and out of myself, I came home to my fortification ⁹, not feeling, as we say, the ground ¹⁰; I went on, but terrified to the last degree ¹¹, looking behind me at every two or three steps, mistaking every bush and tree, and fancying ¹² every stump at a distance to be a man;

¹³ What strange unaccountable whimsies came into my thoughts, was für sonderbare unbegreifliche Einfälle mir kamen. ¹⁴ Auf dem Wege.

nor is it possible to describe how many various shapes an affrighted imagination represented things to me in, how many wild ideas were formed every moment in my fancy, and what strange, unaccountable whimsies came into my thoughts ¹³ by the way ¹⁴.—DE FOE'S *Robinson Crusoe*.

83. GOETHE'S DEATH.*

Goethe's Tod. — ¹ Wollte. ² But, after a turn, aber gleich nach dem ersten Versuch. ³ Sich wieder niederlassen. ⁴ Ihm zur Seite. ⁵ In den beiden andern. ⁶ Daß er zu phantasiren anfing. ^{6a} Auf schwarzem Hintergrund. ⁷ To leave lying about, herumfahren lassen.

(I.) The following morning—it was the 22d March 1832—he tried ¹ to walk a little up and down the room, but after a turn ² he found himself too feeble to continue. Reseating himself ³ in the easy-chair, he chatted cheerfully with Ottilie, his daughter-in-law, on the approaching spring, which would be sure to restore him. He had no idea of his end being so near.

The name of Ottilie was frequently on his lips. She sat by him ⁴, holding his hand in both of hers ⁵. It was now observed that his thoughts began to wander incoherently ⁶. “See!” he exclaimed, “the lovely woman's head—with black curls—in splendid colours—a dark background ^{6a}!” Presently he saw a piece of paper on the floor, and asked them how they could leave Schiller's letters so carelessly lying about ⁷.

* Goethe starb zu Weimar. See HAVET and SCHRUMPF'S “German Studies,” pp. 120 and 121, „Goethe's Haus zu Weimar.”

⁸ Nach. ⁹ Seen in a dream, eines Traumbildes. ¹⁰ Mehr und mehr un deutlich, or immer undeutlicher. ¹¹ Seine letzten hörbaren Worte. ¹² Rüdte rasch heran. ¹³ Der stets nach mehr Licht gestrebt hatte. ¹⁴ Sandte demselben noch einen Abschiedsruf nach. ¹⁵ Als er in den Schatten des Lobes hinüber wandelte. ¹⁶ Sanft er. ¹⁷ Die Wärterin. ¹⁸ To glide, dahin-schwinden.

(II.) Then he slept softly, and on awakening, asked for⁸ the sketches he had just seen. These were the sketches seen in a dream⁹. In silent anguish the close, now so surely approaching, was awaited. His speech was becoming less and less distinct¹⁰. The last words audible¹¹ were, "*More light!*" The final darkness grew apace¹², and he whose eternal longings had been for more light¹³ gave a parting cry for it¹⁴ as he was passing under the shadow of death¹⁵.

He continued to express himself by signs, drawing letters with his forefinger in the air while he had strength, and finally, as life ebbed, drawing figures slowly on the shawl which covered his legs. At half-past twelve he composed himself¹⁶ in the corner of the chair. The watcher¹⁷ placed her finger on her lip to intimate that he was asleep. If sleep it was, it was a sleep in which a great life glided¹⁸ from the world.—LEWES'S *Story of Goethe's Life*.

84. COLUMBUS AT THE SIGHT OF LAND.*

Kolumbus beim Anblicke des Landes. — ¹ Heftig und stark.
² Endlich. ³ Seinen Zweck erreicht. ⁴ Glorreich bestätigt. ⁵ Sollte. ⁶ Großartig.
⁷ Was für eine stürmische Menge von Muthmaßungen muß sich seines Geistes bemächtigt haben. ⁸ Evident from, sichtbar an. ⁹ Pflanzen.
¹⁰ Die von seinen Ufern daher trieben. ¹¹ Moving, sich hin und her bewegend.
¹² To be the residence of, von . . . bewohnt sein.

(Columbus touched (lanbete) at San Salvador on the 12th of October 1492.)

The thoughts and feelings of Columbus at the sight of land must have been tumultuous and intense¹. At length², in spite of every difficulty and danger, he had accomplished his object³. The great mystery of the ocean was † revealed; his theory, which had been the scoff of sages, was triumphantly established⁴; he had secured for himself a glory which must⁵ be as durable as the world itself. It is difficult even for the imagination to conceive the feelings of such a man at the moment of so sublime⁶ a discovery. What a bewildering crowd of conjectures must have thronged upon his mind⁷ as to the land which lay before him, covered with darkness. That it was fruitful was evident from⁸ the vegetables⁹ which floated from its shores¹⁰. He thought, too, that he perceived in the air the fragrance of aromatic groves. The moving¹¹ light which he had beheld proved that it was the residence of¹² man. But what were its inhabitants?

* See page 8. Also, HAVET and SCHRUMPF'S "German Studies," p. 10, „Das Ei des Kolumbus.“

† Was—war. The English student must carefully distinguish whether the *past participle* construed with *to be* expresses the *endurance* of an action, or *existence* in a state which is the *result* of such an action. In the first case, *to be* is rendered by the auxiliary *werden*; in the second, by *sein*. Thus we say, in the sentence in question, *war*, &c., it was the *result* of Columbus's voyage.

¹³ Ein wildes Geschlecht von Ungeheuern, ¹⁴ Beizulegen. ¹⁵ Im indischen Meere. ¹⁶ Müssen sich ihm aufgebracht haben. ¹⁷ Say, until the night would be over. ¹⁸ Eine öde Wüste. ¹⁹ Gewürzwälder. ²⁰ Tempel.

Were they like those of other parts of the globe? or were they some strange and monstrous race¹³, such as the imagination in those times was prone to give¹⁴ to all remote and unknown regions? Had he come upon some wild island far in the Indian seas¹⁵; or was this the famed Cipango itself*, the object of his golden fancies? A thousand speculations of the kind must have swarmed upon him¹⁶, as he watched for the night to pass away¹⁷, wondering whether the morning light would reveal a savage wilderness¹⁸, or dawn upon spicy groves¹⁹, and glittering fanes²⁰, and gilded cities, and all the splendour of Oriental civilisation.—WASHINGTON IRVING'S *Life of Columbus*.

85. THE JESTER AND THE SWINEHERD.

(A DIALOGUE.)

Der Spassvogel und der Schweinehirt. — ¹ Ich rathe dir. ² To leave to destiny, dem Schicksal überlassen.

WAMBA, *the jester*—GURTH, *the swineherd*.

WAMBA. Gurth, I advise thee¹ to call off thy dog, and leave thy herd to their destiny², which, whether they meet

* *This famed Cipango itself*—gar jenes berühmte Cipango. Names of places, countries, &c., are regularly of the *neuter* gender. No article, however, is used before them, except when an *adjective* precedes them; e.g., das reiche England, das einige Deutschland. N.B.—Die Schweiz, die Türkei, die Normandie, and various other names, of provinces chiefly, being of the *feminine* gender, are never used without the article.

³ Banditen. ⁴ Can be little else than to be, kann kaum ein anderes sein kann, als daß sie . . . werden. ⁵ Normannen. ⁶ Sollen . . . werden. ⁷ Mein Hirn ist zu stumpf. ⁸ Und meine Seele zu vertrieben. ⁹ To read = to solve, zu lösen. ¹⁰ Sächsisch. ¹¹ Die Sau. ¹² Geschunden. ¹³ Zerhackt. ¹⁴ Pork, in order to preserve the quibble, although in German it is Schweinefleisch. ¹⁵ Es freut mich sehr, daß . . . ¹⁶ Ist gut normännisch-französisch. ¹⁷ To be in charge, unter der Obhut stehen. ¹⁸ Behält es seinen . . . ¹⁹ Normännisch. ²⁰ Feissen. ²¹ In den Rittersaal. ²² Sich ergötzen. ²³ The fool's pate, der Narrenschädel.

with bands of travelling soldiers, or of outlaws ³, or of wandering pilgrims, can be little else than to ⁴ be converted into Normans ⁵ before morning, to thy no small ease and comfort.

GURTH. The swine turned ⁶ Normans to my comfort! Expound that to me, Wamba, for my brain is too dull ⁷, and my mind too vexed ⁸, to read ⁹ riddles.

WAMBA. Why, how call you those grunting brutes running about on their four legs?

GURTH. Swine, fool, swine ¹⁰; every fool knows that.

WAMBA. And swine is good Saxon; but how call you the sow ¹¹ when she is flayed ¹², and quartered ¹³, and hung up by the heels like a traitor?

GURTH. Pork ¹⁴.

WAMBA. I am very glad ¹⁵ every fool knows that too; and pork, I think, is good Norman-French ¹⁶; and so when the brute lives, and is in the charge ¹⁷ of a Saxon slave, she goes ¹⁸ by her Saxon name; but becomes a Norman ¹⁹, and is called ²⁰ pork, when she is carried to the castle-hall ²¹ to feast ²² amongst nobles; what dost thou think of this, friend Gurth, ha?

GURTH. It is but too true doctrine, friend Wamba, however it got into thy fool's pate ²³.

²⁴ Herr Rath Dchs. ²⁵ Der behält. ²⁶ In den Händen von. ²⁷ Leib-eigenen und Hörigen. ²⁸ Wie du einer bist. ²⁹ Aber er wird Monsieur le Bœuf, ein feuriger französischer Stutzer. ³⁰ Sobald er vor die hochadelichen Mäuler kommt. ³¹ Auch Herr Rath. ³² Auf ähnliche Art. ³³ Er ist ein Sachse. ³⁴ So lange als. ³⁵ Tendance, Pflege und Fütterung. ³⁶ Annehmen. ³⁷ The matter of enjoyment, der Gaumentzettel.

WAMBA. Nay, I can tell you more ; there is old Alderman Ox ²⁴ that continues to hold ²⁵ his Saxon epithet while he is under the charge of ²⁶ serfs and bondsmen ²⁷ such as thou ²⁸, but becomes Beef, a fiery French gallant ²⁹, when he arrives before the worshipful jaws ³⁰ that are destined to consume him. Mynheer Calf, too ³¹, becomes Monsieur de Veau, in the like manner ³² ; he is Saxon ³³ when ³⁴ he requires tendance ³⁵, and takes ³⁶ a Norman name when he becomes matter of enjoyment ³⁷.—SIR WALTER SCOTT'S *Ivanhoe*, chap. i.

86. VALUE OF TIME AND MONEY.

Werth der Zeit und des Geldes. — ¹ Are good economists, sind gute Haushälter. ² In. ³ Wo Du anfangen solltest. ⁴ An. ⁵ Geneigt. ⁶ Davon. ⁷ Left, noch.

LONDON, February 5, 1750.

(I.) MY DEAR FRIEND,—Very few people are good economists of ¹ their fortune, and still fewer of their time ; and yet, of the two, the latter is the more precious. I heartily wish you to be a good economist of both ; and you are now of ² an age to begin ³ to think seriously of ⁴ these two important articles. Young people are apt ⁵ to think that they have so much time before them that they may squander what they please of it ⁶, and yet have enough left ⁷ ; as very great fortunes (*sing.*) have frequently

⁸ *Present tense* in German. ⁹ *Schatzamt's-Sekretär*. ¹⁰ *Unter*. ¹¹ *To practise, ausführen*. ¹² *To owe, verbanfen*. ¹³ *To hold true, gelten in Betreff (Gen.)* ¹⁴ *To amount to, ausmachen*. ¹⁵ *You are to be by appointment, Du sollst sein*. ¹⁶ *Die Leute*. ¹⁷ *To saunter away, verschlenkern*. ¹⁸ *By way of dipping, um nur einen Blick hinein zu thun*.

reduced ⁸ people to a ruinous profusion. Fatal mistakes, always repented of, but always too late! Old * Mr Lowndes, the famous secretary of the treasury ⁹ in ¹⁰ the reigns (*sing.*) of King William, Queen Anne, and King George the First, used to say, "Take care of the pence, and the pounds will take care of themselves." To this maxim, which he not only preached, but practised ¹¹, his two grandsons at this time owe ¹² the very considerable fortunes (*sing.*) that he left them.

(II.) This holds equally true as to ¹³ time; and I most earnestly recommend to you the care of those minutes and quarters of hours in the course of the day which people think too short to deserve their attention, and yet, if summed up at the end of the year, would amount to ¹⁴ a very considerable portion of time. For example: you are to be at such a place at twelve by appointment ¹⁵; you go out at eleven to make two or three visits first; those persons ¹⁶ are not at home. Instead of sauntering away ¹⁷ that intermediate time at a coffee-house, and possibly alone, return home, write a letter beforehand for the ensuing post, or take up a good book: I do not mean Descartes, Malebranche, Locke, or Newton, by way of dipping ¹⁸, but

* Whenever a *proper name* is preceded by an *adjective*, the *German* idiom requires the *article* before the *adjective*; hence above: der alte Herr.

¹⁹ Irgend ein vernünftiges und zugleich unterhaltendes Buch. ²⁰ So wirst Du Deine Zeit sparen. ²¹ Und sie keineswegs schlecht anwenden. ²² Mit. ²³ *Infinitive* used as a substantive. ²⁴ Gehaltlos und eitel. ²⁵ A romance, ein Roman, m. ²⁶ Die wahnwitzigen Träumereien. ²⁷ Von Tausend und Eine Nacht. ²⁸ To stick to, sich an . . . halten. ²⁹ The best established books, die besten und bewährtesten Bücher. ³⁰ So. ³¹ To use, um . . . zu gebrauchen. ³² Eine Londoner Vergleichung. ³³ Fünfzig Prozent.

some book of rational amusement ¹⁹, and detached pieces, as Horace, Boileau, Waller, La Bruyère, &c.

(III.) This will be so much time saved ³⁰, and by no means ill employed ²¹. Many people lose a great deal of time by ²² reading ²³; for they read frivolous and idle ²⁴ books, such as the absurd romances ²⁵ of the two last centuries, the Oriental ravings and extravagances ²⁶ of the "Arabian Nights ²⁷," &c. Stick to the ²⁸ best established books ²⁹ in every language, the celebrated poets, historians, orators, or philosophers. By these means ³⁰, to use ³¹ a city metaphor ³², you will make fifty per cent. ³³ of that time of which others do not make above three or four, or probably nothing at all, &c.—CHESTERFIELD.

87. CASTLES IN THE AIR.

Luftschlöffer. — ¹ He left him to the value of, &c., hinterließ er ihm hundert Drachmen. ² Daraus den größtmöglichen Nutzen zu ziehen.

(I.) Alnaschar was an idle fellow, that would never set his hand to any business during his father's life. When his father died, he left him to the value of a hundred drachmas ¹. Alnaschar, in order to make the best of it ²,

³ Für. ⁴ To pile up, aufstapeln. ⁵ Customers, Käufer. ⁶ To overhear, zufälliger Weise hören—make the phrase *active*. ⁷ Beim Großhändler. ⁸ Im Kleinen wieder verkaufen. ⁹ In sehr kurzer Zeit. ¹⁰ Amount to, zu . . . anwachsen. ¹¹ Meinen Glashandel. ¹² Kostbaren. ¹³ To enjoy one's self, sich wohl sein lassen. ¹⁴ Zum Herrn.

laid it out in ³ bottles and glasses. These he piled up ⁴ in a large open basket; and having made choice of a very little shop, placed the basket at his feet, and leaned his back upon the wall in expectation of customers ⁵.

As he sat in this posture, with his eyes upon the basket, he fell into a most amusing train of thought, and was overheard ⁶ by one of his neighbours as he talked in the following manner:—

“This basket,” said he, “cost me at the wholesale merchant's ⁷ a hundred drachmas. I shall quickly make two hundred by selling it in retail ⁸. These two hundred drachmas will in a very little ⁹ rise to four hundred, which will amount in time to ¹⁰ four thousand. Four thousand drachmas cannot fail of making eight thousand. As soon as by these means I am master of ten thousand, I will lay aside my trade of a glassman ¹¹, and turn jeweller. I shall then deal in diamonds, pearls, and all sorts of rich ¹² stones. When I have got together as much wealth as I can well desire, I will make a purchase of the finest house I can find, with lands, slaves, and horses. I shall then begin to enjoy myself ¹³ and make a noise in the world. I will not, however, stop there, but still continue my traffic until I have got together a hundred thousand drachmas.

(II.) “When I have thus made myself master ¹⁴ of a hundred thousand drachmas, I shall naturally set myself

¹⁵ Auf fürstlichen Fuß stellen. ¹⁶ Ihr gehörige Achtung gegen mich einzuschleßen.
¹⁷ In Folge. ¹⁸ Um ihr tiefe Achtung gegen mich einzuprägen. ¹⁹ Ganz in
 seine Träumereien vertieft. ²⁰ Konnte nicht umhin. ²¹ Voll.

on the footing of a prince ¹⁵, and will demand the grand vizier's daughter in marriage. When I have brought the princess to my house, I shall take particular care to breed her in due respect for me ¹⁶. To this end I shall confine her to her (own) apartments, make her a short visit, and talk but little to her. Her women will represent to me that she is inconsolable by reason ¹⁷ of my unkindness, but I shall still remain inexorable. Her mother will then come and bring her daughter to me, as I am seated on a sofa. The daughter, with tears in her eyes, will fling herself at my feet, and beg me to receive her into my favour. Then will I, to imprint her with a thorough veneration ¹⁸ for my person, spurn her with my foot in such a manner that she shall fall down several paces from the sofa ! ”

Alnaschar was entirely swallowed up in his vision ¹⁹, and could not forbear ²⁰ acting with his foot what he had in his thoughts ; so that, unluckily striking his basket of ²¹ brittle ware, he kicked his glasses to a great distance from him into the street, and broke them into ten thousand pieces.—ADDISON.

88. ADVICE TO A YOUNG MAN WHO THINKS OF EMIGRATING TO AUSTRALIA.

Rathschläge für einen jungen Mann, der vor hat, nach Australien auszuwandern. — ¹ In der Bibliothek des Unterhauses. ² Eine Voraussetzung. ³ Daß. ⁴ Prüfungszeit. ⁵ Denken Sie nicht an Auswanderung. ⁶ Seinen Verstand, und den in guter Menge. ⁷ Zubringen. ⁸ In der Verbreifachung desselben. ⁹ Nehmen Sie . . . mit. ¹⁰ Mit der Fahrpost.

LIBRARY OF THE HOUSE OF COMMONS ¹, Tuesday Night.

MY DEAR PISISTRATUS,—

. I sympathise with your
aspirations ; looking at your nature and to your objects, I
give you my advice in a word—EMIGRATE !

My advice is, however, founded on one hypothesis ²—viz., that ³ you are perfectly sincere—you will be contented with a rough life and with a moderate fortune at the end of your probation ⁴. Don't dream of emigrating if you want to make a million or the tenth part of a million. Don't dream of emigrating ⁵, unless you can ENJOY its hardships—to bear them is not enough !

Australia is the land for you, as you seem to surmise. Australia is the land for two classes of emigrants : 1st, The man who has nothing but his wits, and plenty of them ⁶ ; 2dly, The man who has a small capital, and who is contented to spend ⁷ ten years in trebling it ⁸. I assume that you belong to the latter class. Take out ⁹ three thousand pounds, and, before you are thirty years old, you may return with ten or twelve thousand pounds. If that satisfies you, think seriously of Australia. By coach ¹⁰, to-morrow, I will send you down all the best books on the

¹¹ So genaue Nachricht als ich kann. ¹² Von der Kolonial-Expedition.
¹³ Ruhig. ¹⁴ Auf den Schafweiden. ¹⁵ Machen Sie sich für ein Buschleben
tauglich. ¹⁶ Die Philosophie der getheilten Arbeit ist dorthin noch nicht
gebrungen. ¹⁷ Ein bisschen. ¹⁸ Mit möglichst wenigen Werkzeugen. ¹⁹ Wer-
den Sie ein guter Schütze. ²⁰ Die bloße Thatfache, daß Sie gelernt haben.
²¹ Legen Sie das feine Herrchen ab. ²² Dadurch. ²³ He . . . who, derjenige,
welcher. ²⁴ Sich selbst in allen Dingen genügt. ²⁵ Bedientenpaß, u.

subject; and I will get you what detailed information I
can ¹¹ from the Colonial Office ¹². Having read these, and
thought over them dispassionately ¹³, spend some months
yet among the sheep-walks ¹⁴ of Cumberland; learn all
you can from the shepherds (whom) you can find—from
Thyrsis to Menalcas. Do more: fit yourself in every way
for a life in the bush ¹⁵, where the philosophy of the
division of labour is not yet arrived at ¹⁶. Learn to turn
your hand to everything. Be something ¹⁷ or a smith,
something of a carpenter—do the best you can with the
fewest tools ¹⁸; make yourself an excellent shot ¹⁹; break
in all the wild horses you can borrow. Even if you want
to do none of these things when in your new settlement,
the having learnt to do them ²⁰ will fit you for many other
things not now foreseen.* DE-FINE-GENTLEMANISE your-
self ²¹ from the crown of your head to the sole of your
foot, and become the greater aristocrat for so ²² doing; he
is more than an aristocrat, he is a king, who ²³ suffices in
all things for himself ²⁴—who is his own master because he
wants no VALETAILLE ²⁵. I think that Seneca has ex-
pressed that thought before me; and I would quote the
passage, but the book, I fear, is not in the library of the
House of Commons.

* You cannot foresee now.

²⁶ To tell me. ²⁷ Herr N. N. ²⁸ Gird up my loins, gürte meine Lenden. ²⁹ Ueberlasse Sie. ³⁰ Ihr ergebenster.

But here J—— comes and tells me ²⁶ that I am expected to speak and answer N—— ²⁷, so I, the man of the old world, gird up my loins ²⁸, and leave you ²⁹, with a sigh, to the youth of the new.—Yours affectionately ³⁰,

ALBERT TREVANION.

—LORD LYTTON, *The Caxtons*.

89. LADY M. WORTLEY MONTAGUE TO HER SISTER, THE COUNTESS OF MAR.

Lady M. Wortley Montague an ihre Schwester die Gräfin von Mar. — ¹ Leider. ² Kapitän. ³ To tide over, mit der Flut überfahren. ⁴ After two days, &c., nach zweitägiger langjamer Fahrt. ⁵ Starf. ⁶ To keep one's feet, sich auf den Füßen halten. ⁷ Very handsomely, tüchtig. ⁸ Nie sah ich einen Mann, der mehr in Angst war.

ROTTERDAM, August 3, 1716.

I flatter (*dat.*) myself, dear sister, that I shall give you some pleasure in letting you know that I have safely passed the sea, though we had the ill-fortune ¹ of a storm. We were persuaded (*act.*) by the captain ² of the yacht to set out in a calm, and he pretended there was nothing so easy as to tide it over ³; but after two days slowly moving ⁴, the wind blew so hard ⁵, that none of the sailors could keep their feet ⁶, and we were all Sunday night tossed very handsomely ⁷. I never saw a man more frightened ⁸ than the captain.

For my part, I have been so lucky as neither to suffer from fear nor sea-sickness; though, I confess, I was so impatient

⁹ The long-boat, das große Boot. ¹⁰ Nach Brief. ¹¹ Gewerksleute.
¹² Aus verschiedenfarbigem Marmor. ¹³ Die holländischen Mägde. ¹⁴ To
 fancy, sich denken. ¹⁵ Markt. ¹⁶ Die Kaufahrer. ¹⁷ Die Läden und
 Magazine. ¹⁸ Waaren. ¹⁹ Daß ich mir kaum denken kann.

to see myself once more upon dry land, that I would not stay till the yacht could get to Rotterdam, but went in the long-boat ⁹ to Helvoetsluys, where we had "voitures" to carry us to the Brill ¹⁰.

I was charmed with the neatness of that little town; but my arrival at Rotterdam presented me a new scene of pleasure. All the streets are paved with broad stones, and before many of the artificers' ¹¹ doors are placed seats of various-coloured marbles ¹², so neatly kept, that I assure you I walked almost all over the town yesterday, "incognito," in my slippers, without receiving one spot of dirt; and you may see the Dutch maids ¹³ washing the pavement of the street with more application than ours do our bed-chambers. The town seems so full of people, with such busy faces, all in motion, that I can hardly fancy ¹⁴ it is not some celebrated fair ¹⁵; but I see it is every day the same. 'Tis certain no town can be more advantageously situated for commerce. Here are seven large canals, on which the merchants' ships ¹⁶ come up to the very doors of their houses. The ships and warehouses ¹⁷ are of (a) surprising neatness and magnificence, filled with an incredible quantity of fine merchandise ¹⁸, and so much cheaper than what we see in England, that I have much ado to persuade myself ¹⁹ I am still so near it.—MARY WORTLEY MONTAGUE.

90. COUNTRY LIFE.*

Reize des Landlebens. — ¹ Unser Zufluchtsort. ² Were equal strangers to . . . and, kannten . . . ebensovienig als. ³ In der nächsten Nähe. ⁴ In search of, um . . . zu holen. ⁵ Ursprünglich. ⁶ Arbeiten. ⁷ Als Tage. ⁸ Sie sangen Weihnachtslieder. ⁹ Schickten sich Liebesnoten. ¹⁰ Am St. Valentins-Morgen. ¹¹ Zur Fastnachtszeit. ¹² Am St. Michaels-Abende. ¹³ Der Geistliche. ¹⁴ Mit Pfeifen und Trommeln. ¹⁵ Hageborn und Geißblatt.

(I.) The place of our retreat ¹ was in a little neighbourhood, consisting of farmers who tilled their own grounds, and were equal strangers to ² opulence and poverty. As they had almost all the conveniences of life within themselves ³, they seldom visited towns or cities in search of ⁴ superfluities. Remote from the polite, they still retained the primeval ⁵ simplicity of manners; and, frugal by habit, they scarcely knew that temperance was a virtue. They wrought ⁶ with cheerfulness on days of labour, but observed festivals as intervals ⁷ of idleness and pleasure. They kept up the Christmas carol ⁸, sent true love-knots ⁹ on Valentine morning ¹⁰, ate pancakes on Shrovetide ¹¹, showed their wit on the 1st of April, and religiously cracked nuts on Michaelmas eve ¹². Being apprised of our approach, the whole neighbourhood came out to meet their minister ¹³ dressed in their finest clothes, and preceded ¹⁴ by pipe and tabor; a feast also was provided for our reception, to which we sate cheerfully down; and what the conversation wanted in wit was made up in laughter.

(II.) At a small distance from the house my predecessor had made a seat overshadowed by a hedge of hawthorn and honeysuckle ¹⁵. Here, when the weather was fine, and our labour soon finished, we usually sat together to enjoy

* See HAVET and SCHRUMPF'S "German Studies," Lesson 70, "Ein Landhaus," and Lesson 71, "Das Feld."

¹⁶ Ein für außerordentliche Gelegenheiten aufbewahrter Genuß. ¹⁷ With no small share of, mit nicht geringer. ¹⁸ Blaue Glockenblumen und Tausendgüldenraut. ¹⁹ To waft, zuwehen. Translate, wafted to us, uns.

an extensive landscape in the calm of the evening. Here, too, we drank tea, which was now become an occasional banquet¹⁶; and as we had it but seldom, it diffused a new joy, the preparation for it being made with no small share¹⁷ of bustle and ceremony. On these occasions our two little ones always read for us, and they were regularly served after we had done. Sometimes, to give a variety to our amusements, the girls sung to the guitar; and, while they thus formed a little concert, my wife and I would stroll down the sloping field that was embellished with bluebells and centaury¹⁸, talk of our children with rapture, and enjoy the breeze that wafted¹⁹ both health and harmony. —GOLDSMITH'S *Vicar of Wakefield*.

91. OLIVER TWIST'S JOURNEY TO LONDON.

Oliver Twist's Wanderung nach London. — ¹To be seated, sitzen. ²Die Aufschrift. ³To awaken a new train of ideas, eine neue Reihe von Gedanken wachrufen. ⁴Die große, gewaltige Stadt! ⁵Arbeitshaus. ⁶Need want, zu darben brauchen.

(I.) The stone by which Oliver was seated¹ bore, in large characters, an intimation² that it was just seventy miles from that spot to London. The name awakened a new train of ideas³ in the boy's mind. London! that great large place⁴! nobody—not even Mr Bumble—could ever find him there! He had often heard the old men in the workhouse⁵, too, say that no lad of spirit need want⁶,

⁷ Mittel und Wege. ⁸ To be bred, aufwachsen. ⁹ Es war der rechte Ort.
¹⁰ Während diese Gedanken an seinem Geiste vorüberzogen. ¹¹ Sprang er auf.
¹² Er war schon vier Meilen in der Richtung nach London gegangen.
¹³ Ist in der That sehr angenehm. ¹⁴ Marsch von. ¹⁵ Ging. ¹⁶ An einer Hausthüre.
¹⁷ An der Landstraße. ¹⁸ Unter einen Heuschaber. ¹⁹ Er froz.

in London, and that there were ways ⁷ of living in that vast city which those who had been bred ⁸ up in country parts had no idea of. It was the very place ⁹ for a homeless boy, who must die in the streets unless some one helped him. As these things passed through his thoughts ¹⁰ he jumped ¹¹ upon his feet, and again walked forward.

(II.) He had diminished the distance between himself and London by full four miles ¹² before he recollected how much he must undergo ere he could hope to reach his place of destination. As this consideration forced itself upon him, he slackened his pace a little, and meditated upon his means of getting there. He had a crust of bread, a coarse shirt, and two pairs of stockings in his bundle. He had a penny, too, in his pocket. "A clean shirt," thought Oliver, "is a very comfortable thing—very ¹³; and so are two pairs of darned stockings; and so is a penny; but they are small helps to a sixty-five miles' walk ¹⁴ in winter time."

(III.) Oliver walked ¹⁵ twenty miles (weit) that day; and all that time tasted nothing but the crust of dry bread and a few drops of water, which he begged at the cottage-door ¹⁶ by the roadside ¹⁷. When the night came, he turned into a meadow, and creeping close under a hayrick ¹⁸, determined to lie there till morning. He felt frightened at first, for the wind moaned dismally over the empty fields, and he was cold ¹⁹ and hungry, and more

²⁰ Einbrechen. ²¹ Bund. ²² Verschlimmerte seinen Zustand. ²³ Weiter kriechen. ²⁴ If it had not been for, ohne. ²⁵ Solleinnnehmer. ²⁶ Auf der Landstraße. ²⁷ To take pity upon, Mitleiden haben mit. ²⁸ Mit dem armen Waisenknaben. ^{28a} Und noch darüber. ²⁹ To sink deeper into, einen tiefern Eindruck auf . . machen. ³⁰ To undergo, ausstehen. ³¹ Die Fensterladen.

alone than he had ever felt before. Being very tired with his walk, however, he soon fell asleep and forgot his troubles.

He felt cold and stiff when he got up next morning, and so hungry that he was obliged to exchange his penny for a small loaf in the very first village through which he passed. He had walked no more than twelve miles when night closed in ²⁰ again. His feet were sore ²¹, and his legs so weak that they trembled beneath him. Another night passed in the bleak damp air made him worse ²²; when he set forward on his journey next morning, he could hardly crawl along ²³.

(IV.) In fact, if it had not been for ²⁴ a good-hearted turnpike-man ²⁵, and a benevolent old lady, Oliver would most assuredly have fallen dead upon the king's highway ²⁶. But the turnpike-man gave him (a meal of) bread and cheese; and the old lady, who had a shipwrecked grandson wandering barefooted in some distant part of the earth, took pity upon ²⁷ the poor orphan ²⁸, and gave him what she could afford—and more ^{28a}—with such kind and gentle words, and such tears of sympathy and compassion, that they sank deeper into ²⁹ Oliver's soul than all the sufferings he had ever undergone ³⁰.

(V.) Early on the seventh morning after he had left his native place, Oliver limped slowly into the little town of Barnet. The window-shutters ³¹ were shut; the street

³² War zum Tagewerke erwacht. ³³ Einsamkeit und Trostlosigkeit. ³⁴ Thürschwelle. ³⁵ The window-blinds, die Saloufien. ³⁶ Einige; der eine und der andere blieb stille stehen. ³⁷ Im Vorbeigehen. ³⁸ Bot ihm seinen Beistand an. ³⁹ Oder kummerte sich. ⁴⁰ Das Herz nicht.

was empty; not a soul had awakened to the business of the day ³². The sun was rising in all his splendid beauty, but the light only served to show the boy his own lonesomeness and desolation ³³, as he sat, with bleeding feet, and covered with dust, upon a cold doorstep ³⁴. By degrees the shutters were opened, the window-blinds ³⁵ were drawn up, and people began passing to and fro. Some few ³⁶ stopped to gaze at Oliver for a moment or two, or turned round to stare at him as they hurried by ³⁷; but none relieved him ³⁸, or troubled themselves ³⁹ to inquire how he came there. He had no heart ⁴⁰ to beg.—CHARLES DICKENS'S *Oliver Twist*.

92. THOMAS CARLYLE ON FRIEDRICH SCHILLER.

Was Carlyle von Schiller sagt. — ¹ Der letzten Hälfte. ² Deserving of our notice, beachtungswerth. ³ Seine glänzenden Geistesgaben. ⁴ Seine edlen Neigungen und Gefühle. ⁵ *Deservedly*, verdientermaßen; leave out "and," but put the adverb first.

Among the writers of the concluding part ¹ of the last century, there is none more deserving of our notice ² than Friedrich Schiller*. Distinguished alike for the splendour of his intellectual faculties ³, and the elevation of his tastes and feelings ⁴, he left behind him, in his works, a noble emblem of these great qualities; and the reputation which he thus enjoys, and has merited ⁵, excites our attention

* See pp. 86 and 130. See also HAVET and SCHRUMPF'S "German Studies," p. 51.

⁶ Active verb. ⁷ Sein Leben war vielfach, &c., . . . ⁸ Er schrieb. ⁹ Die damals kaum eine feste Form erhalten. ¹⁰ Deuten. ¹¹ Den Rang eines Klassikers schon zugestanden zu haben. ¹² To enroll, beireihen beizählen. ¹³ Keineswegs nur. ¹⁴ Von der großen Menschenfamilie. ¹⁵ Entrißen werden. ¹⁶ Eben so schnell. ¹⁷ Unheimfällt.—Dat.

the more, on considering the circumstances under which it was acquired ⁶. Schiller had peculiar difficulties to strive with, and his success has likewise been peculiar. Much of his life ⁷ was deformed by inquietude and disease, and it terminated at middle age. He composed ⁸ in a language then scarcely settled into form ⁹, or admitted to a rank among the cultivated languages of Europe: yet his writings are remarkable for their extent and variety as well as their intrinsic excellence; and his own countrymen are not his only, or perhaps his principal admirers. It is difficult to collect or interpret ¹⁰ the general voice; but the World, no less than Germany, seems already to have dignified him with the reputation of a classic ¹¹; to have enrolled ¹² him among that select number whose works belong not wholly ¹³ to any age or nation, but who, having instructed their own contemporaries, are claimed as instructors by the great family of mankind ¹⁴, and set apart ¹⁵ for many centuries from the common oblivion which soon ¹⁶ overtakes ¹⁷ the mass of authors, as it does the mass of other men.—CARLYLE.

93. A FAMILY IN DISTRESS.

Eine Familie im Unglück.—¹ Schwächlich. ² Put in „Sahren.“ ³ To sit by one, an Jemandes Seite, or Jemanden zur Seite sitzen. ⁴ Ein junger Mann. ⁵ Begrüßte. ⁶ Du bist der Nikolaus. ⁷ Nimm mir den Hut ab. ⁸ Sich über . . . erheben. ⁹ Add „fo.“ ¹⁰ Spencer, m. ¹¹ Entrüstung, f. ¹² Gelbschnäbel und Möpfe. ¹³ Ebenfalls.

NICHOLAS NICKLEBY INTRODUCED TO HIS UNCLE.

A lady in deep mourning rose as Mr Ralph Nickleby entered, but appeared incapable of advancing to meet him, and leant upon the arm of a slight¹ but very beautiful girl of about seventeen², who had been sitting by her³. A youth⁴, who appeared a year or two older, stepped forward, and saluted⁵ Ralph as his uncle.

“Oh!” growled Ralph, with an ill-favoured frown, “you are Nicholas⁶, I suppose?”

“That is my name, sir,” replied the youth.

“Put my hat down⁷,” said Ralph, imperiously. “Well, ma’am,* how do you do? You must bear up against⁸ sorrow, ma’am; I always do⁹.”

“Mine was no common loss!” said Mrs Nickleby, applying her handkerchief to her eyes.

“It was no uncommon loss, ma’am,” returned Ralph, as he coolly unbuttoned his spencer¹⁰. “Husbands die every day, ma’am, and wives too.”

“And brothers also, sir,” said Nicholas, with a glance of indignation¹¹.

“Yes, sir, and puppies, and pugdogs¹² likewise¹³,”

* Whenever Ralph speaks to his sister-in-law, use „Frau Schwägerin“ instead of “madam.”

¹⁴ Was mein Bruder für eine Krankheit hatte. ¹⁵ Pah! ¹⁶ Das sind alles Dummheiten. ¹⁷ Of . . . from . . . in Folge (Gen.) ¹⁸ Albernese Geschwätz. ¹⁹ Das Gewinsel. ²⁰ Eine Märtyrin. ²¹ Der Junge. ²² Zurückschieben. ²³ Mit bitterem Hohn. ²⁴ Was willst du anfangen, um dein Brod zu verdienen. ²⁵ Jedenfalls will ich meiner Mutter nicht zur Last fallen. ²⁶ Während das Herz bei diesen Worten ihm zu bersten drohte. ²⁷ Freilich kämest du schlecht ab, im Falle du es thun wolltest.

replied his uncle, taking a chair. "You didn't mention in your letter what my brother's complaint was¹⁴, ma'am."

"The doctors could attribute it to no particular disease," said Mrs Nickleby, shedding tears. "We have too much reason to fear that he died of a broken heart."

"Pooh¹⁵!" said Ralph, "there is no such thing¹⁶. I can understand a man's dying of a¹⁷ broken neck, or suffering from¹⁷ a broken arm, or a broken head, or a broken leg, or a broken nose; but a broken heart!—nonsense¹⁸, it's the cant¹⁹ of the day. If a man can't pay his debts, he dies of a broken heart, and his widow's a martyr²⁰."

"Some people, I believe, have no hearts to break," observed Nicholas, quietly.

"How old is this boy²¹, for God's sake?" inquired Ralph, wheeling back²² his chair, and surveying his nephew from head to foot with intense scorn²³.

"Nicholas is very nearly nineteen," replied the widow.

"Nineteen, eh!" said Ralph, "and what do you mean²⁴ to do for your bread, sir?"

"Not to live upon my mother²⁵," replied Nicholas, his heart swelling as he spoke²⁶.

"You'd have little enough to live upon, if you did²⁷" retorted the uncle, eyeing him contemptuously.

²⁸ In keinem Falle werde ich Hilfe von Ihnen erwarten. ²⁹ Schweige!
³⁰ Ernst, rauh und abstoßend. ³¹ Freimüthig. ³² Das Auge des Alten
 leuchtete unheimlich von Habsucht und Hinterlist. ³³ Im Auge des Jünglings
 bligten klarer Verstand und edler Stolz. ³⁴ Neben. ³⁵ Einen Buben.
³⁶ Haben ihren Theil mit Beschlag belegt.

"Whatever it be," said Nicholas, flushed with anger,
 "I shall not look to you to make it more ²⁸."

"Nicholas, my dear, recollect yourself," remonstrated
 Mrs Nickleby.

"Dear Nicholas, pray"—urged the young lady.

"Hold your tongue, sir ²⁹!" said Ralph. "Upon my
 word! Fine beginnings, Mrs Nickleby,—fine beginnings!"

Mrs Nickleby made no other reply than entreating
 Nicholas by a gesture to keep silent; and the uncle and
 nephew looked at each other for some seconds without
 speaking. The face of the old man was stern, hard-
 featured, and forbidding ³⁰; that of the young one, open,
 handsome, and ingenuous ³¹. The old man's eye was keen
 with the twinklings of avarice and cunning ³²; the young
 man's bright with the light of intelligence and spirit ³³.
 His figure was somewhat slight, but manly and well
 formed; and apart from ³⁴ all the grace of youth and
 comeliness, there was an emotion from the warm young
 heart in his look and bearing which kept the old man
 down.

The mutual inspection was at length brought to a close
 by Ralph withdrawing his eyes, with a great show of
 disdain, and calling Nicholas "a boy ³⁵."

"Well, ma'am," said Ralph, impatiently, "the creditors
 have administered ³⁶, you tell me, and there is nothing
 left for you?"

³⁷ To dispose of, verfügen über. ³⁸ Heute. ³⁹ Nein, plagte Nikolaus heraus. ⁴⁰ Doch' ich mir's doch. ⁴¹ Er hatte vor. ⁴² Ihn einmal was werten zu lassen. ⁴³ One thinks always and never does . . . ⁴⁴ This I saw this morning. ⁴⁵ Deinem guten Glücke.

"Nothing," replied Mrs Nickleby.

"And you spent (*p. indef.*) what little money you had in coming all the way to London, to see what I could do for you?" pursued Ralph.

"I hoped," faltered Mrs Nickleby, "that you might have an opportunity of doing something for your brother's children. It was his dying wish that I should appeal to you in their behalf."

"I don't know how it is," muttered Ralph, walking up and down the room, "but whenever a man dies without any property of his own, he always seems to think he has a right to dispose of ³⁷ other people's ³⁸. Have you ever done anything, sir?" (turning to his nephew.)

"No," replied Nicholas, bluntly ³⁹.

"No, I thought not ⁴⁰!" said Ralph. "This is the way my brother brought up his children, ma'am?"

"Nicholas has not long completed such education as his poor father could give him," rejoined Mrs Nickleby, "and he was thinking of ⁴¹"——

"Of making something of him some day ⁴²" said Ralph. "The old story; always thinking, and never doing ⁴³. . . Are you willing to work, sir?" he said, frowning on his nephew.

"Of course I am," replied Nicholas, haughtily.

"Then, see here, sir," said his uncle. "This caught my eye ⁴⁴ this morning, and you may thank your stars ⁴⁵ for it."

⁴⁶ Mit dieser Einleitung. ⁴⁷ Knaben. ⁴⁸ Erhalten. ⁴⁹ Kost, Kleidung, Bücher, Taschengeld, Unterricht in allen lebenden und todtten Sprachen. ⁵⁰ In der Befestigungskunde. ⁵¹ Bedingungen. ⁵² Nebenausgaben. ⁵³ Attends, ist zu sprechen. ⁵⁴ Assistent. ⁵⁵ Wird gesucht. ⁵⁶ Ein Doktor der Philosophie. ⁵⁷ Die Zeitung.

With this exordium ⁴⁶ Mr Ralph Nickleby took a newspaper from his pocket, and after unfolding it, and looking for a short time among the advertisements, read as follows :—

“ ‘EDUCATION.—At Mr Wackford Squeers’s Academy, Dotheboys Hall, at the delightful village of Dotheboys, near Greta Bridge, in Yorkshire, youth ⁴⁷ are ⁴⁸ boarded, clothed, booked, furnished with pocket-money, provided with all necessaries, instructed in all languages living and dead ⁴⁹, mathematics, orthography, geometry, astronomy, trigonometry, the use of the globes, algebra, writing, arithmetic, fortification ⁵⁰, and every other branch of classical literature. Terms ⁵¹, twenty guineas per annum. No extras ⁵², no vacations, and diet unparalleled. Mr Squeers is in town, and attends ⁵³ daily, from one till four, at the Saracen’s Head, Snow Hill.

“ ‘*N.B.*—An able assistant ⁵⁴ wanted ⁵⁵. Annual salary, £5. A Master of Arts ⁵⁶ would be preferred.’ ”

“ ‘There !’ said Ralph, folding the paper ⁵⁷ again. “Let him get that situation, and his fortune is made.”—

CHARLES DICKENS’S *Nicholas Nickleby*.

94. THE ARMADA.*

Die Armada. — ¹ Der Haupttheil. ² Der Lajo. ³ To witness, sehen. ⁴ Matrosen. ⁵ Mann Soldaten. ⁶ Mit einer ungeheuern Anzahl von Geschützen. ⁷ Im Seebienste ganz unerfahren. ⁸ Ueberfiel. ⁹ Kap Finisterre. ¹⁰ Orders, Oberbefehl. ¹¹ To stand out, in die See stechen, absegeln. ¹² Singular—referring to Flotte. ¹³ Wurde vom Sturme erfasst. ¹⁴ Nicht wenig. ¹⁵ To be misinformed, falsch berichtet werden. ¹⁶ Bezüglich des. ¹⁷ Erlittenen Schadens.

(I.) On the 29th of May 1588, the main body¹ of the Spanish fleet sailed from the Tagus². It consisted of one hundred and thirty vessels, most of them of a size which had not previously been witnessed³ in Europe, and, besides the crews⁴ of the different ships, contained not less than twenty thousand troops⁵, with a prodigious train of artillery⁶ and other munitions of war. Of this mighty array, to which the Spaniards had given the name of the Invincible Armada, the Duke of Medina Sidonia took the command—a brave man, but wholly unaccustomed to maritime adventure⁷. The commencement of the enterprise was unfortunate. A storm took⁸ the fleet as it rounded Cape Finisterre⁹, in consequence of which the admiral, after losing several of his vessels, was forced to withdraw into the harbour of Corunna.

(II.) Meanwhile the English navy, under the orders¹⁰ of the gallant Lord Howard of Effingham, stood out¹¹ to meet their enemies. They¹² too were caught in the gale¹³, and returned to Plymouth; a circumstance which contributed not slightly¹⁴, in the end, to the preservation of their country; for the Duke of Medina, having been misinformed¹⁵ as to¹⁶ the amount of damage done¹⁷, stood

* See HAVET and SOHRUMPF'S "German Studies," p. 123, "Die Armada."

¹⁸ Kam er herangefegelt, sie anzugreifen. ¹⁹ Mit offenkbarer Verletzung seiner Anweisungen. ²⁰ Eine Hauptschlacht vermeidend. ²¹ Skilful skirmishes, erfolgreiche Gefechte. ²² To satisfy, hinreichend zeigen. ²³ Bezügliche. ²⁴ As their opponents were the reverse, ihre Feinde waren gerade das Gegentheil. ²⁵ Though inferior in bulk and weight of armament, wenn auch nicht so groß und nicht so schwer armirt. ²⁶ Weit lenksamer. ²⁷ Spanier. ²⁸ To close upon, ganz nahe an . . . herankommen. ²⁹ Je nachdem die Umstände es erforderten. ³⁰ Und die Aussicht auf Erfolg sie zu lenken schien. ³¹ Auf der Rheide von Calais. ³² Vinassen. ³³ To send adrift, treiben lassen. ³⁴ Erschredt.

over to attack them¹⁸, in direct violation of his instructions¹⁹, which forbade all minor actions till the army should have landed. Howard, however, having been warned of the enemy's approach by a Scotch pirate, instantly put to sea¹¹, and avoiding a general action²⁰, began a series of skilful skirmishes²¹, which soon satisfied²² both parties of their relative²³ fitness to contend for the supremacy of the ocean.

(III.) The English seamen, though comparatively few in number, were as skilful and enterprising as their opponents were the reverse²⁴; and their ships, though inferior in bulk and weight of armament²⁵, proved infinitely more pliable²⁶ under every change of weather. They could choose at will their own position, and either cannonaded the Spaniards²⁷ from a distance, or closed upon them²⁸, according as circumstances invited²⁹, and the chance of success appeared to guide³⁰. The Spaniards, on the other hand, unaccustomed to navigate ships so bulky, fell into total confusion, from which they never recovered. They sought shelter in Calais roads³¹; but Howard, fitting six of his smaller pinnaces³² as fire-ships, sent them adrift³³, when the Spaniards cut their cables in alarm³⁴, and fled in all directions. It was now evident to the Duke of Parma,

³⁵ Dünkirchen. ³⁶ Vereitelt. ³⁷ Untauglich. ³⁸ Der Inselbewohner. ³⁹ Einen bessern Erfolg zu erzielen. ⁴⁰ To want, nicht haben. ⁴¹ Um Großbritannien herumzugeseln. ⁴² Er lichtete die Anker. ⁴³ Geschwader. ⁴⁴ To cripple, untauglich machen. ⁴⁵ Ein furchtbarer Sturm. ⁴⁶ Als er sich zwischen den Orkney-Inseln verfangen hatte. ⁴⁷ Mit den haarsträubendsten Berichten. ⁴⁸ Seelente.

who with 34,000 men occupied the sea-coast about Dunkirk ³⁵, that the intentions of his master were frustrated ³⁶. He therefore refused to intrust his splendid army to the convoy of a fleet which had shown itself inadequate ³⁷ to face that of the islanders ³⁸; while the admiral, after a fruitless endeavour to bring about a change of purpose ³⁹, saw that it would be necessary for him to return, with as little delay as possible, to Spain.

(IV.) But the winds blew unfavourably; the Spaniards wanted ⁴⁰ both the courage and the skill to face them, and the Duke of Medina, in an evil hour, determined to circumnavigate Great Britain ⁴¹. He weighed anchor ⁴², and was again assailed in his voyage by the squadrons ⁴³ which watched him. These did him considerable damage, capturing several ships, and crippling ⁴⁴ more; but that from which he chiefly suffered was a furious gale of wind ⁴⁵, which overtook him when entangled among the Orkneys ⁴⁶. Numerous vessels were lost in that gale, with all their crews and passengers, insomuch that, of the gallant army which had quitted their native country full of confidence and courage, scarcely one-half returned, to fill both the palace and the cottage with the most alarming accounts ⁴⁷ of the inhospitality of the English seas, and the indomitable valour of English sailors ⁴⁸.—GLEIG.

95. THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE.

Die englische Sprache. — ¹ Verbreitet. ² Das Englische. ³ Die Länderstrecke. ⁴ Die vorherrschende Sprache ist. ⁵ To be struck with, staunen . . . über. ⁶ Das Französische. ⁷ Zu einer gewissen Periode. ⁸ Wird. ⁹ Auf dem Continent or auf dem Festlande. ¹⁰ Im Ganzen. ¹¹ Doch das ist noch nicht Alles. ¹² Die aller Wahrscheinlichkeit nach in Aussicht stehende immer weitere Verbreitung. ¹³ Furnishes, gibt. ¹⁴ Continente. ¹⁵ Von Amerika, der südliche wie der nördliche. ¹⁶ Des nördlichen Theiles. ¹⁷ Die Amerikaner. ¹⁸ To plant settlements, Niederlassungen anlegen.

(I.) No language, either in ancient or modern times, has ever been so widely spread ¹ as English ². If we compare the extent of territory ³ over which the ancient Latin was spoken with that in which English now predominates ⁴, we shall be struck with ⁵ the difference; and when we remember that neither India nor America was known to the Romans, we shall easily see how much more widely diffused ¹ is the modern English than was the ancient Latin language. In modern times, French ⁶, at one period ⁷, had a considerable preponderance in Europe, and it is ⁸ still * very generally studied, and even spoken, on the Continent ⁹. But, on the whole ¹⁰, the preponderance is now greatly on the side of English.

(II.) This is not all ¹¹; the probably future propagation ¹² of English is ¹³ also a matter for consideration. . It seems likely that in the course of time both the continents ¹⁴ of America, South as well as North ¹⁵, will fall into the hands of the European inhabitants of the northern portion ¹⁶, and that the Americans ¹⁷ will also plant settlements ¹⁸ in many

* *Is still.* — Whenever the English *being* might be put after *is*, as above, "*is being studied, spoken,*" *is* must invariably be translated by "*wird,*" because it is truly passive.

¹⁹ The Pacific Ocean, das stille Meer. ²⁰ Schicksal. ²¹ Reich. ²² Aller Wahrscheinlichkeit nach. ²³ Angelsächsisch. ²⁴ Far more extensively, viel weiter. ²⁵ True, this is, freilich ist das . . . ²⁶ Noch eine bloße Mutmaßung. ²⁷ Judging, wenn man urtheilen soll . . . und . . . betrachtet. ²⁸ At the rate, in demselben Verhältnisse wie . . . ²⁹ Am Ende.

parts of the eastern shores of the Pacific Ocean ¹⁹. Whatever may be the future destiny ²⁰ of China and Japan, many portions of these empires ²¹ will, in all probability ²², fall under the dominion of an Anglo-Saxon ²³ race; and if so, the English language will prevail far more extensively ²⁴ than at present in all the quarters of the globe. True, this is ²⁵ mere matter of speculation ²⁶; but judging ²⁷ from present circumstances, and the wonderfully active spirit of those who speak English, it is not altogether unreasonable to conclude, that if it should advance at the rate ²⁸ we have witnessed for the last fifty years, it will eventually ²⁹ become the dominant language of the world.—GRAHAM.

96. THE LEGACY.

Das Vermächtniß. — ¹ Was soll dein Geheul und Geseufz?

A. Ah, sir! you will be very much afflicted. I have most lamentable tidings to communicate to you.

B. What is it? Can one of my creditors have presumed to threaten me?

A. Not that. The misfortune that I have to announce to you is far greater. Our heavenly Father! . . . alas! we are all mortal! do not be terrified.

B. What's the meaning of your miserable whining and sighing ¹?

² To be struck with an apoplectic fit, vom Schläge gerührt werden. ³ Zum Universalserben machen. ⁴ Vernommen. ⁵ May God, &c., Gott der Herr hab' ihn selig! ⁶ To envy one a thing, einen um etwas beneiden. ⁷ Seine Geldkiste. ⁸ Seligen.

A. Your uncle has been struck with an apoplectic fit ².

B. How, my uncle is dead?

A. He has only just given up the ghost; he expired in my arms.

B. What a lamentable event!

A. He loved you much, as it appears. An hour before his death he was still speaking of you.

B. Ah, the good, venerable man! the excellent, pious man! He has probably appointed me his universal legatee ³! But tell me, is he indeed dead?

A. I have received ⁴ his last sigh; I have closed his eyes*.

B. May God have him in His holy keeping ⁵! It is well for him; let us not envy him ⁶ his repose. Do you think he has left a handsome property?

A. His strong-box ⁷ is piled up with money-bags.

B. O cruel fate! thou snatchest from me him whom I held dearest upon earth. I shall never be consoled for this loss; throughout my whole life I shall bewail the untimely demise of my dear, late ⁸ uncle. He was the

* Translate, *I have closed to him the eyes*. Whenever we express a thing done to ourselves, and by ourselves, or done to another, or done to ourselves by another, in German (as in French) no possessive adjective is used before the part mentioned; e.g., ich habe mir die Haare gekämmt, I combed my hair; ich habe mich in den Finger geschnitten, I cut my finger; er hat ihn ins Gesicht geschlagen, he slapped his face; man hat uns die Fenster eingeschlagen, they smashed our windows.

⁹ Wehe mir! ¹⁰ Der Leichenwagen. ¹¹ I wish, &c., er soll ein möglichst großartiges Leichenbegängniß haben. ¹² Ueberliefern. ¹³ Von oben bis unten. ¹⁴ Doktor- und Apotheker-Rechnungen. ¹⁵ Das Testament.

most deserving, the most virtuous of men; ah, woe is me⁹!

A. I know he was worth more than a hundred thousand pounds.

B. Go quick, and make the necessary preparations for the interment. Let the large hearse¹⁰ with six horses be kept in readiness. I wish the funeral obsequies to take place with all imaginable pomp¹¹. Over his grave a marble monument shall be erected with a magnificent epitaph, that may hand down¹² to posterity the excellent qualities of my dear uncle. The whole house, from the top to the bottom¹³, shall be hung (with) black. Every one shall put on crape and mourning, and the whole town shall be invited to pay the last honours to the defunct.

A. By the by, I had nearly forgotten it; I found these papers in his pocket, and laid hold of them, lest they might fall into strange hands; perhaps you will find some notices of his past life in them which will surprise you.

B. Let us see! Hum, doctors' bills, apothecaries' bills¹⁴! a list of his debts! it is very considerable. Hah! here comes the chief thing: the will¹⁵. Let us read it: "I bequeath to God my poor soul." Good! "I bequeath to my neighbour N., for the friendship which he has constantly had for me, my house, goods, and chattels; to my coachman my carriage and horses; to my manservant my whole wardrobe," &c.

A. But you, sir! should he have forgotten you?

¹⁶ Die geringste Anhänglichkeit. ¹⁷ Ein gemeiner Büßling. ¹⁸ Der alte Narr! ¹⁹ Lesen Sie nur weiter. ²⁰ Welche Feindseligkeit! ²¹ To be enabled to, können. ²² Den Fensterlohn. ²³ Wie viele Kutschen soll ich für die Leiche bestellen? ²⁴ Pack' dich fort, Kegel!

B. Strange! I see here a quantity of legacies, and my name not amongst them. But here it comes. "As for my nephew, who has never shown me the slightest affection ¹⁶, who is a spendthrift, a low libertine ¹⁷"—— O the old dotard ¹⁸!

A. Read further, sir ¹⁹.

B. "And who would never hearken to my good counsel, I ought to entirely disinherit him"—What malignancy ²⁰!—"Yet, as he most probably has not a farthing in the world, I give him voluntarily one shilling, that he may be enabled to ²¹ pay hangman's fee ²². He may content himself with that!"

A. How many mourning-coaches shall I bespeak for the mourning procession ²³, sir?

B. Pack yourself off, sirrah ²⁴!

97. BYRON.

Byron. — ¹ Regent.

The pretty fable by which the Duchess of Orleans illustrated the character of her son, the Regent ¹, might*, with little change, be applied to Byron. All the fairies,

* *Might*, in German „können," is almost constantly used instead of *mögen*, whenever the speaker wishes to say he has no objection to what is going on, or to what is proposed, asked, &c.; e.g., du kannst gehen (to a boy), you may go; er kann sagen was er will, let him say what he pleases.

² Gifft. ³ To reverse, rückgängig machen. ⁴ To mix up with, beifügen (Dat.) ⁵ In his very person, ja sogar in seinem Aeußern. ⁶ Opposite extremes, Widersprüche. ⁷ Er entstammte. ⁸ To obtain scandalous publicity, berüchtigt werden. ⁹ Und nur der Milde seiner Richter hatte er es zu verdanken gehabt, daß er nicht am Galgen starb. ¹⁰ Pair (sprich Pär). ¹¹ Große Geistesgaben. ¹² Ein ungesundes Element. ¹³ Launisch. ¹⁴ Und doch. ¹⁵ Eine Erziehung. ¹⁶ Launenhaft. ¹⁷ To deal with, verfahren . . mit. ¹⁸ Die Mutter.

save one, had been bidden to his cradle. All the gossips had been profuse of their gifts. One had bestowed nobility, another genius, a third beauty. The malignant elf ² who had been uninvited came last, and, unable to reverse ³ what her sisters had done for their favourite, had mixed up a curse with ⁴ every blessing. In the rank of Lord Byron, in his understanding, in his character, in his very person ⁵, there was a strange union of opposite extremes ⁶. He was sprung ⁷ from a house, ancient, indeed, and noble, but degraded and impoverished by a series of crimes and follies which had attained a scandalous publicity ⁸. The kinsman whom he succeeded had died poor, and, but for merciful judges, would have died upon the gallows ⁹. The young peer ¹⁰ had great intellectual powers ¹¹; yet there was an unsound part ¹² in his mind. He had naturally a generous and feeling heart; but his temper was wayward ¹³ and irritable. He had a head which statuary loved to copy, and a foot the deformity of which the beggars in the streets mimicked. Distinguished at once by the strength and by the weakness of his intellect; affectionate, yet ¹⁴ perverse; a poor lord and a handsome cripple, he required, if ever man required, the firmest and most judicious training ¹⁵. But capriciously ¹⁶ as nature had dealt with ¹⁷ him, the parent ¹⁸ to whom the office of form-

¹⁹ Put, still more capricious. ²⁰ At one time—at another time,—halb—halb. ²¹ Ersticken. ²² Liebesungen. ²³ To insult, spotten über . . . ²⁴ Seinen Klumpfuß. ²⁵ With fondness, zärtlich; put also adjectives for the other two nouns. ²⁶ To indulge one without discrimination, über alle Maßen gegen einen nachsichtig sein. ²⁷ To punish without discrimination, mit unvernünftiger Strenge behandeln. ²⁸ Das verwöhnte Kind. ²⁹ Not absolutely, nicht gerade. ³⁰ Was extolled far above its merit, wurde weit überschätzt. ³¹ Zu, Dat. ³² Höhe.

ing his character was intrusted was more capricious still ¹⁹. At one time ²⁰ she stifled ²¹ him with her caresses ²²; at another time she insulted his ²³ deformity ²⁴. He came into the world; and the world treated him as his mother had treated him, sometimes with fondness ²⁵, sometimes with cruelty, never with justice. It indulged him ²⁶ without discrimination, and punished him without discrimination ²⁷. He was truly the spoiled child ²⁸,—the spoiled child of fortune, the spoiled child of fame, the spoiled child of society. His first poems were received with a contempt which, feeble as they were, they did not absolutely ²⁹ deserve. The poem which he published on his return from his travels was, on the other hand, extolled far above its merit ³⁰. At twenty-four he found himself on the highest pinnacle of literary fame, with Scott, Wordsworth, Southey, and a crowd of other distinguished writers beneath ³¹ his feet. There is scarcely an instance in history of so sudden a rise to so dizzy an eminence. ³²—MACAULAY'S *Essays*.

98. OF STUDIES.

Von den Studien. — ¹ Crafty, listig. ² But that is a wisdom without them, das ist wieder eine besondere Wissenschaft. ³ To, um zu. ⁴ To take for granted, etwas für ausgemacht halten. ⁵ Theilweise. ⁶ Nicht allzu aufmerksam. ⁷ Durch einen Beauftragten. ⁸ In weniger wichtigen Dingen. ⁹ Destillirte. ¹⁰ Wasser, not modif. ¹¹ Geschmacklos. ¹² Vortreich. ¹³ Geübt. ¹⁴ Sollte er. ¹⁵ To confer, sich besprechen. ¹⁶ Einen fertigen Verstand. ¹⁷ Die Geschichte, sing.

Crafty¹ men contemn studies, simple men admire them, and wise men use them ; for they teach not their own use ; but that is a wisdom without them², and above them, won by observation. Read not to³ contradict and confute, nor to believe and take for granted⁴, nor to find talk and discourse, but to weigh and consider. Some books are to be tasted, others to be swallowed, and some few to be chewed and digested ; that is, some books are to be read only in parts⁵ ; others to be read, but not curiously⁶ ; and some few to be read wholly, and with diligence and attention. Some books also may be read by deputy⁷, and extracts made of them by others ; but that would be only in the less important arguments⁸, and the meaner sort of books ; else distilled⁹ books are, like common distilled waters¹⁰, flashy¹¹ (things). Reading * maketh a full¹² man ; conference a ready¹³ man ; and writing an exact man ; and, therefore, if a man write little, he had need¹⁴ have a great memory ; if he confer¹⁵ little, he had need have a present wit¹⁶ ; and if he read little, he had need have much cunning to seem to know that he doth not. Histories¹⁷

* The English *present participle*, when used as a *substantive*, is translated by the German *infinitive with or without the article*.

¹⁸ Das Lesen der Dichter. ¹⁹ Spitzfindig. ²⁰ Die Logik und Rhetorik tüchtig zum Disputiren.

make men wise ; poets ¹⁸*, witty ; the mathematics, subtle ¹⁹ ; natural philosophy, deep ; moral, grave ; logic and rhetoric, able to contend ²⁰.—BACON.

99. A TRIP TO SCARBOROUGH.

Ein Ausflug nach Scarborough. — ¹ Die Vorhalle. ² Gasthaus.
³ Meiner Treu—wir lassen lieber. ⁴ Es muß doch noch was d'rin sein.
⁵ We ate, &c., wir verzehrten das letzte Stück Ihrer Garderobe. ⁶ Zum Fenster ! ⁷ Ich hab' mir herausgenommen.

SCENE I.—THE HALL ¹ OF AN INN ².

*Enter YOUNG FASHION and LORY, POSTILION following
 with a portmanteau.*

YOUNG FASHION. Lory, pay the post-boy, and take the portmanteau.

LORY. Faith, sir, we had better let ³ the post-boy take the portmanteau, and pay himself.

FASHION. Why, sure, there 's something left in it ⁴.

LORY. Not a rag, upon my honour, sir ; we ate the last of your wardrobe ⁵ at Newmalton ; and, if we had had twenty miles farther to go, our next meal must have been of the cloak-bag.

FASHION. Why, 'sdeath ⁶, it appears full.

LORY. Yes, sir ; I made bold to ⁷ stuff it with hay, to save appearances, and look like luggage.

* Substitute, make men.

⁸ Kostet. ⁹ Wechseln. ¹⁰ Lassen lieber den Kutscher, &c. ¹¹ Du hast Recht. ¹² Ich werde Sie unten bezahlen lassen, mein Freund. ¹³ Erlauben Euer Gnaden. ¹⁴ Die Chausseegelber sind auch zu bezahlen. ¹⁵ Natürlich. ¹⁶ To bid, sagen. ¹⁷ Man solle geben. ¹⁸ Was Sie verlangen. ¹⁹ Machen Sie nur, daß Sie fortkommen. ²⁰ So dann kommt auch noch der Stallknecht. ²¹ Mißbrauchen. ²² Er hätte mich beinahe in Verlegenheit gebracht.

FASHION. What shall I do? Harkee, boy, what is ⁸ the chaise?

POSTILION. Thirteen shillings, please your honour.

FASHION. Can you give me change for ⁹ a guinea?

POSTILION. Oh yes, sir.

LORY. So, what will he do now? Sir, you had better ¹⁰ let the boy be paid below.

FASHION. Why, as you say ¹¹, Lory, I believe (that) it will be as well.

LORY. Yes, yes; I'll tell them to discharge you below, (honest) friend ¹².

POSTILION. Please your honour ¹³, there are the turnpikes, too ¹⁴.

FASHION. Ay, ay, the turnpikes, by all means ¹⁵.

POSTILION. And I hope your honour will order me something for myself.

FASHION. To be sure; bid ¹⁶ them give ¹⁷ you a crown.

LORY. Yes, yes; my master doesn't care what you charge them ¹⁸; so get along, you ¹⁹——.

POSTILION. And there's the ostler ²⁰, your honour.

LORY. 'Pshaw! hang the ostler; would you impose upon ²¹ the gentleman's generosity? (*Pushes him out.*) A rascal, to be so ready with his change!

FASHION. Why, faith, Lory, he had nearly posed me ²².

LORY. Well, sir, we are arrived at Scarborough, not

²³ Ohne eine Guinee im Vermögen. ²⁴ Daß Sie. ²⁵ Wofür Sie zu sorgen hätten. ²⁶ To prevail with, Jemanden überreden. ²⁷ Wäre es besser für uns beide. ²⁸ But now for, aber in Betreff Ihres . . . ²⁹ Zum Fenster mit . . . ³⁰ But get him, aber zuerst lassen Sie ihn Ihre jährliche Leihrente einlösen. ³¹ Ihn die Gurgel abschneiden. ³² Jemanden anstellen, der es für mich thun soll. ³³ Holla! ³⁴ „Von oben herab.“

worth a guinea²³! I hope you 'll own yourself²⁴ a happy man—you have outlived all your cares.

FASHION. How so, sir?

LORY. Why, you have nothing left to take care of²⁵.

FASHION. Yes, sirrah, I have myself and you to take care of still.

LORY. Sir, if you could prevail with²⁶ somebody else to do that for you, I fancy we might both fare the better for it²⁷. But now, sir, for my²⁸ Lord Foppington, your eldest brother.

FASHION. Hang²⁹ my eldest brother!

LORY. With all my heart; but get him to redeem your annuity, however³⁰. Look you, sir, you must wheedle him, or you must starve.

FASHION. Look you, sir, I will neither wheedle him nor starve.

LORY. Why, what will you do, then?

FASHION. Cut his throat³¹, or get some one to do it for me³².

LORY. Gad³³, so, sir, I'm glad to find I am not so well acquainted with the strength of your conscience as with the weakness of your purse.

FASHION. Why, art thou so impenetrable a blockhead as to believe he'll help me with a farthing?

LORY. Not if you treat him “du haut en bas³⁴,” as you used to do.

³⁵ Wie willst du, daß ich . . . ³⁶ Ich kann es nicht; Adieu, mein Herr!
³⁷ Du machst mich rasend. ³⁸ Zugeden. ³⁹ Der gute. ⁴⁰ Ever since, die
ganze Zeit . . . seit. ⁴¹ Ein anhänglicher Schlingel. ⁴² One cannot get
rid of him. ⁴³ To seduce from, abwendig machen von.

FASHION. Why, how wouldst thou have me ³⁵ treat him?

LORY. Like a trout—tickle him.

FASHION. I can't flatter.

LORY. Can you starve?

FASHION. Yes.

LORY. I can't—good-bye t'ye ³⁶, sir.

FASHION. Stay—thou'lt distract me ³⁷. But who comes here?—my old friend, Colonel Townly.—(*Enter COLONEL TOWNLY.*)—My dear Colonel, I am rejoiced to meet you here.

COL. TOWNLY. Dear Tom, this is an unexpected pleasure. What! are you come to Scarborough to be present ³⁸ at your brother's wedding?

LORY. Ah! sir, if it had been his funeral, we should have come with pleasure.

COL. TOWNLY. What! honest ³⁹ Lory, are you with your master still?

LORY. Yes, sir, I have been starving with him ever since ⁴⁰ I saw your honour last.

FASHION. Why, Lory is an attached rogue ⁴¹; there's no getting rid of him ⁴².

LORY. True, sir; as my master says, there's no seducing ⁴³ me from his service (*aside*), till he's able to pay me my wages.

FASHION. Go, go, sir; and take care of the baggage.

LORY. Yes, sir; the baggage! I suppose, sir, I must

⁴⁴ Dem Wirth empfehlen. ⁴⁵ To stow, unterbringen. ⁴⁶ Schurfe.

charge ⁴⁴ the landlord to be very particular where he stows ⁴⁵ this.

FASHION. Get along, you rascal ⁴⁶! (*Exit LORY with the portmanteau.*)—SHERIDAN'S *Trip to Scarborough*.

100. THE INFLUENCE OF BOOKS.

Einfluß der Bücher. — ¹ Die Tendenz. ² So habe man Acht. ³ Geistesverfassung, f. ⁴ After all, am Ende. ⁵ Hat es die Wirkung gehabt. ⁶ Under the control of others, unter fremder Leitung. ⁷ And disposed, und stimmt es uns. ⁸ Attempted to abate, versucht . . . zu gestören. ⁹ Has it addressed itself, hat es . . . geschmeichelt.

Would you * know whether the tendency ¹ of a book is good or evil, examine ² in what state of mind ³ you lay it down. Has it induced you to suspect that what you have been accustomed to think unlawful, may after all ⁴ be innocent, and that that may be harmless which you have hitherto been taught to think dangerous? Has it tended ⁵ to make you dissatisfied and impatient under the control of others ⁶; and disposed ⁷ you to relax in that self-government, without which both the laws of God and man tell us there can be no virtue, and consequently no happiness? Has it attempted to abate ⁸ your admiration of what is great and good, and to diminish in you the love of your country and your fellow-creatures? Has it addressed itself ⁹ to your pride, your vanity, your selfishness, or any other of your evil propensities? Has it

* Use „man“ throughout for “you.”

¹⁰ Welchen Namen auch immer sein Titelblatt aufweisen mag. ¹¹ Though it should, sollte es auch. ¹² Die schönste Zierde. ¹³ A rosewood bookcase, ein Buchgestell aus Rosenholz.

defiled the imagination with (what is) loathsome*, or shocked the heart with (what is) monstrous*? Has it disturbed the sense of right and wrong the Creator has implanted in the human soul? If so—if you are conscious of all or any of these effects—or if, having escaped from all, you have felt that such were the effects it was intended to produce, throw the book into the fire, whatever name it may bear on the title-page¹⁰! Throw it into the fire, though it should¹¹ be the prominent feature¹² in a rosewood bookcase¹³.—SOUTHEY'S *Doctor*.

* The adjective when used as a noun is always spelt with a capital.

GERMAN AS IT IS SPOKEN.

Uniform with Havet's "First French Book."

200 pages, foolscap 8vo, price 1s. 6d.

HAVET AND SCHRUMPF'S FIRST GERMAN BOOK;

OR,

PRACTICAL GERMAN LESSONS FOR BEGINNERS.

"The First German Book" has all the characteristics that have made Havet's Works popular. The lessons consist of questions and answers in clear and lively conversational German so as to be easily understood and remembered. The author have avoided the dreary path followed by Ahn and his imitators and endeavoured to produce a work based upon grammar, but which chiefly aims at enabling the pupils to acquire readiness in understanding and fluency in speaking German.

"The First German Book" contains easy Reading Lessons followed by Conversational Exercises, on the plan of Havet's "French Studies."

"A late and very good specimen of a work by which the teaching of German may be facilitated is Havet and Schruppf's 'First German Book.' It is prepared on an intelligible system, and seems admirably calculated to assist materially in helping a student to acquire German."—*The Scotsman*.

"Taken and judged on its own merits, this little work of MM. Havet and Schruppf has more than one point of detail by which it commends itself to our attention. It is simplicity itself in its arrangements. . . . The conversational practice is calculated to initiate the learner into the art of composition."—*The School Board Chronicle*, 14th Dec. 1872.

* * A Specimen Copy of "The First German Book" will be sent gratis to any Teacher applying to

MR ALFRED G. HAVET, *Institution Internationale*, 18 rue Molitor, Auteuil, PARIS.

LONDON:

SIMPKIN, MARSHALL, & CO.; S. LOW & CO.; DULAU & CO.

HAVET'S
UNIFORM CONVERSATIONAL METHOD
FOR THE STUDY OF FOREIGN LANGUAGES.

HAVET AND SCHRUMPF'S
FIRST GERMAN BOOK.

"This book is a most comprehensive little work, containing sixty lessons, and constructed, as far as it is possible to do so, considering the differences between the two languages, on the plan of M. Havet's 'First French Book.' We would especially recommend it to those who have already studied M. Havet's French method of imparting instruction, because, pursuing the same system, it cannot fail to facilitate the efforts of the pupil in the acquirement of the German language. Each section of grammar rules is followed by a model lesson, which, after having been translated into English, is to be re-translated into German from an English version to be found near the end of the book. The model lesson is followed by an exercise, composed of words from the model lesson, a system which has been found to answer so well in M. Havet's French Course; and it can be varied by the insertion or suppression of the negative, by changing the phrase from the affirmative to the interrogative, or *vice versa*. The language used is easy and practical, being such as applies to every-day life, and progressing gradually into more idiomatic forms, as the pupil becomes better acquainted with the construction of the language. A difficulty has always been found in bringing a ponderous language like the German, loaded with affixes and prefixes, subject to weak and strong forms, with its three genders, its multifarious declensions, endless exceptions, and inverted construction, within the reach of children of twelve or thirteen years of age. This book is evidently the work of one who is fully cognisant of such difficulties, and who has framed his rules, examples, and exercises to meet the wants of young pupils, and remove hindrances and ambiguities which he daily encounters. We can affirm, with all certainty, that any child possessing a fair knowledge of English grammar, is in a position to understand this grammar thoroughly, and to profit greatly by its careful study, while many a teacher will find, by adopting it, his course made plainer, and a suggestive method sketched out, which he can alter or enlarge at pleasure. The second course contains a well-selected series of easy stories, with a list of queries appended to each, in German, to be answered by the pupil in the same language. This is fitted to accustom the pupil to converse in German, while the selections are of a nature well calculated to act as an introduction to more idiomatic reading."—*The National Education Gazette*.

LONDON:

SIMPKIN, MARSHALL, & CO.; S. LOW & CO.; DULAU & CO.

HAVET'S UNIFORM METHOD
FOR THE STUDY OF FOREIGN LANGUAGES.

Uniform with Havet's "French Studies,"

GERMAN STUDIES,

COMPREHENDING

GRADUATED CONVERSATIONS UPON THE ORDINARY TOPICS OF
LIFE; COLLOQUIAL EXERCISES AFFORDING PRACTICE IN GERMAN
COMPOSITION; AND SELECT EXTRACTS FROM STANDARD WRITERS.

BY

ALFRED G. HAVET,

OF THE BERLIN SOCIETY FOR THE CULTIVATION OF MODERN LANGUAGES;
Author of "French Studies," "The French Class-Book," &c.

AND

GUSTAV A. SCHRUMPF,

TEACHER OF FOREIGN LANGUAGES.

LONDON:

SIMPKIN, MARSHALL, & CO.; S. LOW & CO.; DULAU & CO.

Uniform with Havet's "French Composition" (with a key).

ENGLISH INTO GERMAN.

Crown 8vo, price 3s. 6d.

GERMAN COMPOSITION,

OR,

ENGLISH PROSE SPECIMENS,

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO GERMAN, WITH THE ASSISTANCE OF NOTES
ON THE IDIOMS AND PECULIARITIES OF BOTH LANGUAGES.

BY

ALFRED G. HAVET,

OF THE BERLIN SOCIETY FOR THE CULTIVATION OF MODERN LANGUAGES;
Author of "French Studies," "French Composition," &c.

AND

A. L. BECKER,

TEACHER OF FOREIGN LANGUAGES.

LONDON:

SIMPKIN, MARSHALL, & CO.; S. LOW & CO.; DULAU & CO.

HAVET'S FRENCH METHOD.

HAVET'S FIRST FRENCH BOOK;

OR,

PRACTICAL FRENCH LESSONS FOR BEGINNERS.

New Edition, 222 foolscap 8vo pages, price 1s. 6d.

HAVET'S FRENCH GRAMMAR.

Tenth Edition, in two crown 8vo volumes.

THE COMPLETE FRENCH CLASS-BOOK:

PART I., price 4s.—Containing Reader, Conversations, Grammar, French and English Exercises, Dictionary of 10,000 Words and numerous Idioms.

*** The First Part is the only book required by Junior Pupils.*

PART II., price 3s. 6d.—The Syntax and Peculiarities, with English and French Exercises, displaying a comparison of the Idioms of the two languages.

*** The two Parts may be had bound in one volume, price 6s. 6d.*

'FRENCH CONVERSATIONS AND READINGS.

Eighth Edition, 400 post 8vo pages, 5s. 6d.

HAVET'S FRENCH STUDIES:

MODERN CONVERSATIONS on the ordinary topics of life; COLLOQUIAL EXERCISES, affording practice in French Composition; 140 EXTRACTS from Standard French Writers, and a DICTIONARY of the Words and Idioms used in the text.

ENGLISH INTO FRENCH.

New Edition, 272 crown 8vo pages, price 3s. 6d.

HAVET'S FRENCH COMPOSITION;

Comprehending—I. ENGLISH PROSE SPECIMENS, to be translated into French, with the assistance of Notes on the Idioms and Peculiarities of both languages. II. OUTLINES OF NARRATIVES to be filled up, LETTERS FROM STANDARD WRITERS to be answered, &c.

FRENCH CONVERSATIONAL INTRODUCTION.

New Edition, 300 post 8vo pages, price 3s.

HAVET'S HOUSEHOLD FRENCH:

280 Conversations in French and English alternately, each Exercise consisting of Questions and Answers of daily use, &c.

LONDON:

SIMPKIN, MARSHALL, & CO. ; S. LOW & CO. ; DULAU & CO.

